

# CULPEPER'S

LAST LEGACY:

Left and bequeathed to his Dearest WIFE,  
for the PUBLICK GOOD.

B E I N G.

The Choicest and most profitable of those  
Secrets which while he lived were lockt up in  
his Breast, and resolved never to be pub-  
lisht till after his Death.

C O N T A I N I N G

Sundry admirable Experiences in severall Sci-  
ences, more especially in *Chyrurgery* and *Physick*:

V I Z.

Compounding } Making of *Waters, Syrups, Oyles,*  
of } *Electuaries, Conserves, Salts,*  
*Medicines,* } *Pills, Purges, and Trochiscs.*

With two particular Treatises; the one of  
*Feavers*, the other of *Pestilence*: As also rare and  
choice *Aphorisms* and *Receipts*, fitted to the Un-  
derstanding of the meanest Capacities.

The *Fifth Impression*; whereunto is added 200 *Choice*  
*Receipts*, lately found, never publisht before in any of  
his other Works; with a Compleat Table.

---

By NICHOLAS CULPEPER *Gent.*  
Student in Astrology and Physick.

---

L O N D O N,

Printed for Nath. Brooke at the Angel in Cornhil, and Obad.  
Blagrove at the Printing-Press in Little-Britain over  
against the Pump, 1671.



Cup. 407. a. 113.

# CULPEPER'S

LAST LEGACY:

Left and bequeathed to his Dearest WIFE,  
for the PUBLICK GOOD.

B E I N G.

The Choicest and most profitable of those  
Secrets which while he lived were lockt up in  
his Breast, and resolved never to be pub-  
lisht till after his Death.

C O N T A I N I N G

Sundry admirable Experiences in several Sci-  
ences, more especially in Chyrurgery and Physick:

V I Z.

Compounding of Medicines, } Making of Waters, Syrups, Oyles,  
Elecluaries, Conserves, Salts,  
Pills, Purges, and Trochischs.

With two particular Treatises; the one of  
*Feavers*, the other of *Pestilence*: As also rare and  
choice *Aphorisms* and *Receipts*, fitted to the Un-  
derstanding of the meanest Capacities.

The Fifth Impression; whereunto is added 200 Choice  
*Receipts*, lately found, never publisht before in any of  
his other Works; with a Compleat Table.

---

By NICHOLAS CULPEPER Gent.  
Student in Astrology and Physick.

---

L O N D O N,

Printed for Nath. Brooke at the Angel in Cornhil, and Obad.  
Blagrove at the Printing-Press in Little-Britain over  
against the Pump, 1671.

B  L



TO HIS DEAR CONSORT,  
M<sup>rs.</sup> Alice Culpeper.

My Dearest,

**T**He Works that I have published to the World (though  
envied by some illiterate Physicians) have merited such just  
applause, that thou mayest be confident in proceeding to publish any  
thing I leave thee, especially this  
Master-piece; assuring my Friends  
and Country-men, that they will  
receive as much benefit by  
this, as by my Dispensatory, and  
that incomparable Piece, call'd,  
Semotica Uranica enlarged,  
and English Physician; with  
others mentioned in the Margent.  
These are the Choycest Secrets,  
which

Compleat  
Midwife's  
Practice.  
School of  
Physick.

which I had many years lockt up  
in my own Breast. I gained them  
by my constant Practice, and by  
them I maintained a continuall  
Reputation in the World, and I  
doubt not but the World will ho-  
nour Thee for divulging them; and  
my Fame shall continue and in-  
crease thereby, though the Period  
of my Life and Studies be at hand  
and I must now bid all things un-  
der the Sun farewell: Farewell  
my dear Wife and Child; fare-  
well Arts and Sciences, which  
so dearly loved; farewell all world-  
ly Glories; adieu Readers.

Nicholas Culpeper



*The Testimony of Mrs. Alice Culpeper concerning this her Husband's Last Legacy.*

**H**AVING in my Hands these my Husband's Last Experiences in Physick and Chyrurgery, &c. composed out of his Daily Practise, which he laid a severe Injunction on me to Publish, for the general good after his Decease; Therefore to stop the mouths of malicious Persons, who may be apt to abuse and slander his Labours, and to discharge that duty and debt of Gratitude due to his Name from One so nearly related to him, I do hereby testifie, That the Copy of what is here Printed is truly and really his own, and was delivered to my Trust amongst his Choicest Secrets upon his Death-bed; and I do further approve the printing thereof, and having viewed them see nothing in them but what is his own. To the truth of all which, I do here subscribe my Hand,

*Alice Culpeper.*



1845  
The first of the year  
was a very dry one  
and the crops were  
very poor. The  
winter was also very  
dry and the crops  
were very poor.  
The spring was very  
dry and the crops  
were very poor.  
The summer was very  
dry and the crops  
were very poor.  
The autumn was very  
dry and the crops  
were very poor.  
The winter was very  
dry and the crops  
were very poor.  
The spring was very  
dry and the crops  
were very poor.  
The summer was very  
dry and the crops  
were very poor.  
The autumn was very  
dry and the crops  
were very poor.  
The winter was very  
dry and the crops  
were very poor.

1846  
The first of the year  
was a very dry one  
and the crops were  
very poor. The  
winter was also very  
dry and the crops  
were very poor.  
The spring was very  
dry and the crops  
were very poor.  
The summer was very  
dry and the crops  
were very poor.  
The autumn was very  
dry and the crops  
were very poor.  
The winter was very  
dry and the crops  
were very poor.  
The spring was very  
dry and the crops  
were very poor.  
The summer was very  
dry and the crops  
were very poor.  
The autumn was very  
dry and the crops  
were very poor.  
The winter was very  
dry and the crops  
were very poor.



The Titles of several Books contained in  
this Fourth Edition of *Culpepers* Last  
Legacy.

BOOK. I.

*Treating of the Head-ach, and several other Distempers.* Beginning at Page 1.

BOOK. II.

*Febrilia, or a Treatise of Feavers in General.* Beginning at page 57.

BOOK III.

*Physical Aphorisms: being above 300 Medicines against divers Diseases incident to the Body of Man.* Beginning at page 73.

BOOK IV.

*A Treatise of the Pestilence, with its prevision, provision, and prevention.* Beginning at page 111.

BOOK V.

*Composita Synopsis: or the chiefeſt Compoſitions now in uſe with our Phyſicians, both Chymiſt and Galeniſt.* Beginning at page 125.

BOOK VI.

*Aphorisms exceeding requiſite for ſuch as intend the Noble (though too much abuſed) Praſtice of Phyſick: containing the Quality of Medicines.* Beginning at page 161.

## BOOK VII.

*Select Aphorisms, containing the Operation of Medicines, according to the place in the Body of frail Man. Beginning at page 169.*

## BOOK VIII.

*Select Medecinal Aphorisms and Receipts for most Diseases our frail Natures are incident to, whilst we are upon Earth; Digested into such a Method, that a Remedy is prefixed for any Disease appertaining to Man's Body, beginning at the Head, and going through to the Feet. Beginning at page 203.*

## BOOK IX.

*Rare Secrets in Physick and Chyrurgery; never before exposed to publick view, and now added to this Fourth Edition of this his Last Legacy, left and bequeathed to his Wife. Beginning at page 243.*

*All Nine Books being Mr. Nicholas Culpeper's Last Legacy to his Wife, as his Choice Secrets.*

---

Culpeper's



# Culpeper's *last* Legacies, &c.

## CHAPTER I.

### Of HEADACH in general, with the several Names and Kinds:

**O**F Headaches or pains in the head simply, there are three sorts, *Κεφαλαγία*, in Greek; in Latin *Capitis dolor*, in English, the *Headach*. Three sorts of pains in the head; 1.

The second is called in Greek *κεφαλαία*; in Latin *Cephalia*; in English a continued or inveterate *Headach*. 2. *κεφαλαία*

The third is called in Greek *ἡμικρανία*; in Latin *Hemicrania*; in English the *Megrims*. 3. *ἡμικρανία*

The two former possess the whole Head, the latter only the one half of it.

By Head I mean in all this Treatise, only the scalp, or so much only of the Head as is covered with hair.

And here is pain ingendred sometimes without the scalp, sometimes within. If it lie within the scalp, there is pain at the root of the eyes, by reason of the immediate influence from thence to the brain; if without the scalp there is no pain there. I question whether all internal pains in the head affect the eyes, but only such whose heat is near the optique nerves.

The first sort of headach, called *κεφαλαγία*, consisteth of divers causes, as heat, cold, dryness, blood, choler, wind, vapour from the stomach, drunkenness, feavers; each of which to discourse of, will require a several Chapter.

*Of the Headach coming of Heat.*

Κεφαλαλ-

γία:

Coming  
of Heat.The  
Cause.

**B**Y Heat I mean only a hot distemper without any kind of moisture or humour. It is caused for the most part by the vehement heat of the Sun; note, *that it is extream hurtful to the brain, to stand bareheaded in the Sun.* It is also caused by immoderate running, jogging or moving; especially to such as are not used to it, though it be most perilous to those that are used to it; it is caused also by being long near the fire, through anger and furiousness, & by hot diseases, and smells of hot things.

Signes.

The Signs of Headach coming by heat, are besides immoderate pain, you shall feel their head burning hot when you touch it, their skin drier than it was wont to be, their eyes look red, they sleep little or not at all, and are delighted by sprinkling or anointing their head with cold things, and find ease by it; other causes may be known by the relation of the Patient.

Cautions  
for the  
sick.

Let the Air & Chamber where the sick abideth, be cold by nature, or else you must make it so by art, as by keeping it continually washed, by strewing there flowers and herbs, and branches of trees that are of a cold nature. as Roses, Violets, Water-lillies, Vine-leaves, Brier-boughs, Willow-boughs, Endive, Succory, or the like; also to pour water out of one Vessel into another near him, to let him smell to Nose-gayes of cold flowers.

Air.

Sleep.

Great heed must be taken that the Patient sleep well, yea more than he usually was wont to do; if he

he sleep not well, as most labouring of this disease do not, provoke him to sleep with *Diascordum*; if that will not do, use *Laudanum* two grains; if that will not do, use three grains, increasing it till it come to six; if he sleep not sooner, let his chamber be quiet, free from noise and wrangling, for that causeth perturbation of mind.

Let his meat be but little, and let that little be of good digestion, as chickens, birds that delight in Mountains and dry places, rabbits, &c. let it be dressed with cold herbs, as lettuce, endive, purslain, and verjuice; Also Almond-Milk, Pomgranates, Raisons of the Sun, and ripe Pears are wholesome for him; but let him avoid Milk, and all other meats of a dilative quality, for they send vapors into the head, and are hurtful for him.

Let his drink be water, in which a little Cinnamon hath been boiled, or in which sirrup of the juyce of Succory, or the juyce of Pomgranates or Lemons is put.

Let him eschew carnal copulation, exercises, and baths, all perturbations of the mind, especially anger, all things that are binding, all things that cause stupefaction, as *crude opium*, Mandrakes, Henbane, Poppeys, Nightshade; those things that bind much, though they cool, must also be avoided, as juyce of Quinces, Medlers, &c.

Let the sick smell to rosewater mixed with vinegar, and often snuffe some of it up into his nose. Let also his forehead, temples, and that part of his head where the pain lies most, be anointed with oyl of fleabane. Let the fleabane be gathered in the hour of *Mars*, he being (if it be possible) in *Aries*, in a good Aspect to the Moon. So will the infirmity be easier and more speedily cured.

Meat:

Drink.

I doubt water is not so good in cold

countrys:

I think a cool Julip were better.

Directions negative.

Affirmative.

Perfumes

Uction. If Mars cause the disease

you had better use

Vervain

gathered in the

hour of

Venus, take this as a general rule.



Stool.

Have a special care that the Patient go to stool in good order, at the least twice a day; if he do not, provoke him first with a Clister, then with an ounce of lenitive Electuary every night when he goes to bed; for the people most incident to this Infirmity, are such as are of a Cholerick constitution, (though the trouble of this disease be no absolute sign of a Cholerick man) which complexion most commonly causeth astringency.

## CHAP. III.

κεφαλαλ-  
γία.  
coming  
of cold.

Of the Head ach κεφαλαλγία coming of Cold.

**B**Y cold I mean simply cold without any Flux of cold humours; for that causeth Lethargies; but only a cold distemper.

The  
cause:

This pain in the head is caused of outward cold, as by tarrying long bareheaded in a cold air, also by sudden applying of any wet and cold, or very cold thing to the head.

Signes.

The signes of this are contrary to the signes of the other that came of a hot distemper; for in this though the pain indeed be vehement, yet the head when it is felt is not hot; their face and eyes do not look red, neither are they hollow, nor shrunk, but on the contrary their face looketh full and pale, and their eyes are full and swarthy; also they desire not cold things, nor find ease but pain by them.

Cautions.

1.  
Sleep.

Let them sleep moderately, but no more than usually they use to do.

2.  
Air.


They must remain in a warm air; if it be cold, remedy it with a good fire.

Let

*his Physical, Chyrurgical Remains.*

5

Let them forbear all meats cold in operation, 3.  
all fish, water-fowles and milk. Let them eat rear Meats.  
eggs, hens, chickens, patridges and pheasants.

For drink, let them use Wine moderately, and 4.  
generally for the cure thereof you must use things Drink.  
that are hot in operation; but in the cure as well  
of this, as other diseases in the head, you must di-  
ligently consider the natural temperature of the  
brain; for it is such a thing as cannot endure either  
violent heat or violent cold. 

Let not their bodies be coſtly, but let them Direction  
have every day a ſtool; if not by nature, give ſup- Negative.  
poſitories. Let them avoid ſadneſs, deep ſpecu-  
lations, and thoughts, ſtudy, and other im-  
moderate affections of the mind.

Let them uſe moving of their body, walking, Affirma-  
and if ſtrength ſuffer, riding. tive.

Oyl of Vervain is Medicinal for the diſeaſe; 1;  
let it be gathered in the day and hour of Venus, Motion.  
ſhe aſcending fortunately. Alſo Rue, Laurel, Or- 2.  
ris, Dill, Chamomell, Mother of Time, Marjoram, Unction:  
are Medicinal for the diſeaſe. For the Oyl an- 2.  
noint the fore-head, temples, noſtrils, and holes If Venus  
behind the ears. cauſe the  
diſeaſe uſe

Alſo to boyl any of theſe herbs, eſpecially Ver- Fleabane  
vain, gathered as beforeſaid, in water, and ſnuſſe an herb  
up the decoction in your noſe. of Mars.

Alſo quilt theſe leaves between two caps, and 3.  
let the Patient wear it upon his head. Naſalia.

The innermoſt cap being made of fine Silk, or 4.  
Sarfnet; take Laurel, Mother of Time, Marjoram, Cucufa:  
Roſemary flowers, of each a handful; Rue, half  
ſo much; Penny-royal, Calaminth, two drams;  
Cloves, Stæchas, one dram; beat theſe into groſs  
powder, & ſew them up in the Cucufa, or double  
cap

cap before mentioned, and having first sprinkled the head with Vinegar, warm it, and apply it.

Pomander.

Also it is very good for the sick to smell to such a Pomander as this. Take of Storax, Calamitis, two drams; Cloves, Mace, wood of Aloes, of each half a dram; Lavender two drams, Gallia Moschata a dram, Musk, Amber-greece, of each two grains, beat them into fine powder, searce them, and with Mussilage made with Gum Tragacanth, and Majoram water; make it up into a Pomander.

#### CHAP. IV.

κεφαλαλ-  
γία.  
coming of  
driness or  
moisture.

#### *Of the Headach κεφαλαγία coming of driness or moisture.*

**B**Y driness here and moisture also is meant only the bare quality; for although *of these alone, without heat or cold, no pain come*, yet hereby the studious in Physick, may learn and discern when the Headach cometh of heat and driness, when of heat and moisture, when of cold and driness, when of cold and moisture.

The  
cause.

Headach through driness is caused through driness of the air, through hunger, much watching, extream studying, by dry Medicines, over-much exercise, excessive use of venery, and violent perturbations of the mind.

The sym-  
ptomes.

Headach of moisture is caused through moisture of the air, moist medicines, baths, hot waters, and other things that moisten over-much.

Driness is known by these signes; there come  
few



few or no excrements out of the nose, the eyes be hollow, the patient cannot sleep neither before nor in the sickness; also the skin of the head is dry, as though it were scorched; dry medicines do not ease the pain but increase it.

Moistness is known by the same that Lethargies are, of which hereafter.

Those in whom driness doth trouble the head, Diet. let them remain in a moist air, let them eat meats of good juyce and a moistning nature, as yolks of Eggs, Cocks stones, and the broth of them, Pheasants, Partriches, and such meats as moisten and nourish much; let them drink wine alwayes with water, let them sleep largely, provoke them to it, as in the second Chapter; let them eschew motion of the body and exercise, and use quietness and rest; let them eschew carnal copulation, hunger, and thirst, and all things that do dry; let them use baths of sweet waters that are warm; let them be merry and pleasant, and avoid all perturbations of mind. For pain coming of moisture; See Lethargies.

Let such as have headach of driness, use to a-Cure by  
noint the seame of their head or *os triquetrum*, Uction.  
with oyl of fleabane, (see Chap. 2.) mixed with  
oyl of sweet Almonds, or alone by it self. Stool.

Let their body be kept soluble.

Also they may bathe their head in water, in Bath.  
which strawberry leaves, violet leaves and flowers, mallows, and other herbs that have a moistning vertue, have been boiled.



## CHAP. V.

Κεφα-  
λαλγία.  
coming of  
Blood.

Of Head ach Κεφαλαλγία coming of  
plenitude of Blood.

πληθώρα.

Cause.

Signes.

Cure.

1.

Air.

2.

Meat.

2.

Drink.

4

Exercise.

**H**itherto I have written of Headach coming through alteration of the bare quality only; I now come to Headach caused of fulness and abundance of blood. I call fulness in this place that which the Greeks call *πληθώρα*; that is, when all the four humours abound and be increased in their proportion, or when blood only abounds.

This is caused commonly of eating all such things as ingender abundance of humours in the body, as meats and drinks of great nourishment plentifully taken; as also the neglecting and omitting exercises, baths, sweatings, and usuall purgings, bleedings, and evacuations.

The Signes be these; the face and the eyes be ruddy, the veins be swollen, so that the least and smallest may be easily seen; the pulse is great and vehement, the urine reddish and thick, the veins of the temple beat more hard, strong and vehement than those at the wrist; the pain of the head is heaviness.

Let the sick be in a cold and dry air; if you can get no such place natural, make it so by art.

Let his diet be spare; let him avoid things that nourish plentifully, as eggs, flesh, &c.

Let his drink be Barlywater in which cold herbs have been boiled, as Endive, Succory, Purslain, Lettice, or only Barly-water with a little Cinamon.

Let him use mean exercise, rubbing his body often;

often; if his body be soluble and no feaver, let him bathe often.

In the beginning of the disease let him bleed 5. *Bleeding.*  
in the *Cephalica* of that arm on which the grief  
lies most; if that appear not, take the middle  
vein; if bleeding in the arm suffice not, let them  
bleed in the forehead.

If age, or weakness, or both, prohibit bleeding, 6.  
use cupping glasses to the shoulders to draw back *Cupping.*  
the Blood.

These done, use Medicines external that are 7.  
cold and astringent, wherewith you are furnish- *Uction.*  
ed in the second Chapter.

You must in this disease have a special care that 8. *Purgings.*  
the body be kept soluble; if necessity require,  
and neither feaver nor weakness hinder, give a  
 *decoctum Sennæ* (with Rubarb and Agrick at one  
Dram) four Ounces.

After this, you may apply such Medicines to the 9.  
head, as disperse the ditate, and dissipate and re- *Repel.*  
pell the humours; such be Mallow seeds, Fenu- *ling.*  
greek seeds, Camomel flowers, Melilot flowers, ei-  
ther in baths, liniments, or oyls, as you think fit.

Also you may bind the lower parts of the body 10.  
hard, (as the things) to call or draw back the *Bindings.*  
humours.

## CHAP. VI.

*Of the Head-ach* κεφαλαγία *coming of Choler.*

κεφαλα-  
γία.  
coming of  
Choler.

**H**ead-ach coming of Cholerick humours, is *Cause.*  
caused of all such things as heat and dry the  
head unnaturally, as care, anger, pain, labour,  
watch-

watching, fasting, eating of meats that be cholerick, as Garlique, Onions, pickled Herrings, and other meats extraordinary salt, &c.

**Signes.**

The signes be these; the pains be like his that hath headach by reason of heat, but that only they have a more sharp and pricking pain, as though awls or bodkins were thrust into their heads; their face is pale and wan, their head is moderately hot, bitterness of the tongue, driness of the eyes, nose and tongue; this disease chanceth most to young and flourishing years, to such as are cholerick of complexion, to them that take overmuch business in hand, and the like.

**Cure.**

1.

**Air.**

Let the sick abide in a cold and moist air, which may be procured by the Art specified in the second Chapter, as by sprinkling the Chamber with cold water, by strewing the Chamber with cold herbs, and moist flowers and branches of trees there mentioned.

2.

**Meats.**

Let his whole Diet be moist; let him eat meats that be moist and of good juyce; give him Endive, Succory, Lettuce, Purslain, small fishes, that live in gravelly Rivers.

3.

**Drinks.**

Let his Drink be water only, in which a little Cinnamon hath been boiled; but let him altogether abstain from Wine and strong drink.

4.

**Sleeps.**

Let him be kept quiet, and have long sleeps; you may provoke sleep by the rules in the second Chapter; let him be merry, and refrain from all perturbations of mind.

5.

**Purges.**

You must  
refrain

purging,

if there be

a fever.

In the beginning of the cure you must purge the cholerick humour with medicines fit for the purpose; such be Hierapicra, Electuary of the juyce of Roses, Rubarb, Pilulæ aureæ, Alephanginæ, &c.

*But if it chance the Cholerick humours do rest quietly*



in any part of the body, as many times it doth, and so becometh adust, and burneth the place where it lyeth, and maketh the man incapable of receiving purging medicines: you must use preparatives to alter and concoct the humour, till it appear by the urine to be digested; the best way of all to do this, is to administer a spoonful of Vinegar of Squils every morning fasting, and let the party walk a quarter of an hour after it; if you find that too hot, as you seldom shall, administer it in an ounce of Julip of Roses, or *Syrupus acetosus*.

Also you may give an ounce of pulp of Cassia at night when he goes to sleep, or lenitive Electuary. 6. Bolus.

If they be very costive, as it is the nature of cholera to procure costiveness, administer clisters of the mollient herbs, viz. *Mallows*, *Beets*, *Violets*, *Pellitory*, and *Mercury*, of each a handful, boiled in a quart of water to three quarts of a pint, in which (being strained) mingle *Diacatholicon* one ounce, *Mel rosarum* one ounce, species *Hiera picra* one dram, make it into a Clister. 7. Clisters.

Also you may use Oyl of fleabane for Unction in the manner and form prescribed in the second Chapter. 8. Unction. Beware of Mars.

If the disease for all these medicines, continue still virulent and malignant, you may apply cupping glasses between the shoulders, and friction or rubbing of the arms and legs, time and care convenient being used. 9. Boxing.

## CHAP. VII.

### Of the Headach coming of windiness.

IT is a cause of eating abundance of windy things; besides, the nature of the body, & other things canse.

κεφαλαλ-  
για.

coming of  
Wind.

The  
things canse.



watching, fasting, eating of meats that be cholerick, as Garlique, Onions, pickled Herrings, and other meats extraordinary salt, &c.

**Signes.**

The signes be these; the pains be like his that hath headach by reason of heat, but that only they have a more sharp and pricking pain, as though awls or bodkins were thrust into their heads; their face is pale and wan, their head is moderately hot, bitterness of the tongue, driness of the eyes, nose and tongue; this disease chanceth most to young and flourishing years, to such as are cholerick of complexion, to them that take overmuch business in hand, and the like.

**Cure.**

1.

**Air.**

Let the sick abide in a cold and moist air, which may be procured by the Art specified in the second Chapter, as by sprinkling the Chamber with cold water, by strewing the Chamber with cold herbs, and moist flowers and branches of trees there mentioned.

2.

**Meats.**

Let his whole Diet be moist; let him eat meats that be moist and of good juyce; give him Endive, Succory, Lettuce, Purslain, small fishes, that live in gravelly Rivers.

3.

**Drinks.**

Let his Drink be water only, in which a little Cinnamon hath been boiled; but let him altogether abstain from Wine and strong drink.

4.

**Sleeps.**

Let him be kept quiet, and have long sleeps; you may provoke sleep by the rules in the second Chapter; let him be merry, and refrain from all perturbations of mind.

5.

**Purges.**

You must  
refrain

purging,

if there be

a fever.

In the beginning of the cure you must purge the cholerick humour with medicines fit for the purpose; such be Hierapicra, Electuary of the juyce of Roses, Rubarb, Pilulæ aureæ, Alephanginæ, &c.

*But if it chance the Cholerick humours do rest quietly*

in any part of the body, as many times it doth, and so becometh adust, and burneth the place where it lyeth, and maketh the man incapable of receiving purging medicines: you must use preparatives to alter and concoct the humour, till it appear by the urine to be digested; the best way of all to do this, is to administer a spoonful of Vinegar of Squils every morning fasting, and let the party walk a quarter of an hour after it; if you find that too hot, as you seldom shall, administer it in an ounce of Julip of Roses, or *Syrupus acetosus*.

Also you may give an ounce of pulp of Cassia at night when he goes to sleep, or lenitive Electuary. 6. Bolus.

If they be very costive, as it is the nature of choler to procure costiveness, administer clisters of the mollient herbs, viz. *Mallows*, *Beets*, *Violets*, *Pellitory*, and *Mercury*, of each a handful, boiled in a quart of water to three quarts of a pint, in which (being strained) mingle *Diacatholicon* one ounce, *Mel rosarum* one ounce, species *Hiera picra* one dram, make it into a Clister. 7. Clisters.

Also you may use Oyl of fleabane for Unction in the manner and form prescribed in the second Chapter. 8. Unction. Beware of Mars.

If the disease for all these medicines, continue still virulent and malignant, you may apply cupping glasses between the shoulders, and friction or rubbing of the arms and legs, time and care convenient being used. 9. Boxing.

## CHAP. VII.

### Of the Headach coming of windiness.

IT is a cause of eating abundance of windy things; besides, the nature of the body, & other things canse.

κεφαλαλ-  
για.

coming of  
Wind.  
The  
things canse.

things were such as were apt to ingender wind.

Signs.

It is known by a distention or stretching within the head, and that without heaviness or beating, as also by noise in the ears.

1.

Diet.

Let all meats and drinks that ingender wind be utterly avoided.

☞

If the Infirmitie lie only in the Head, and ascend from no other part beneath, as many times it is caused only by weakness and imbecillity of the head, then inward medicines profit little.

2.

Concoctives.

Note.

But you must use Concoctive and Discussive Medicines, things that concoct wind, as Fennigreek-seed, Linseed, Chamomel, Yolks of Eggs, Saffron, Hens grease, Goose grease, &c.

3.

Discussives.

Last of all use Discussives, such as be Oyl of Dill, and Rue, Lubines, Barley meal, Lilly roots, Nigella, &c.

4.

Clifters.

But if it come from vapours that ascend from some other part, you must empty the belly with a strong Clifter that doth dissolve wind, made of the emollient herbs, Anniseeds, Caraway, Fennel, and Cumminseeds, adding to the decoction Benedicta Laxativa half an ounce; of the Electuary I mean, for this Clifter draws the vapours down from the head.

Note.

5.

Cautions.

After this you must strengthen the member that it ingender wind no more, whether it be the stomach, liver, or spleen. It were tedious and superfluous to recite the manner how to strengthen all those parts, and others beside these, which may in their own affliction afflict the head also; for I purpose if the Lord give me life and health, and time, to write severally and distinctly of all the diseases in every part of the body.

6.

Repul-  
sives.

Then you may apply to the head things repulsive and driving back, such be, Vinegar, Pomgranate-rinds



*his Physical, Chyrurgical Remains.*

13

rinds and flowers, Wormwood, Melilot, Mints, Plantain, Walwort, Shepherds purse, Nutmegs, Purslain, Houfleeke, Laurel leaves, &c.

If heat be joined with wind in the head, use Oyl of Roses, which is both repulsive, digestive, and discussive, mingled with vinegar, which is both repulsive and discussive, and also attenuating. 7: Unctions

But if there be cold mixed with the wind, then use Oyl of Dill and Camomel, mingled with the juice of Rue and Vinegar.

If the Headach continue still malignant, use sneezing with white Helebores; but beware of catching cold of the head after it. 8. Sneezing

After all this to strengthen the head, and repell the reliëts of the disease, make a Cucufa of these herbs dried, (that is, sew them between two caps, see Chap. 3. Page 7.) viz. Roses, Knotgrass, Willow-leaves, Nightshade, Marjoram, Mother of Time, Hyssop, Rue. 9. Cucufa.

Also the savour of Castoreum, Musk, Amber-greece, and to take Venice triacle, or Mithridate inwardly, are medicinal for the disease. 12: Smells.

CHAP. VIII.

*Of Head-ach caused of the Stomach.*

κεφαλα-  
γία.  
caused by  
the sto-  
mach.

**H**itherto of Diseases caused principally in the head it self; now a word or two of pain of the head that cometh by consent from other places of the body, & first of that which is caused by some evil affection of the stomach; & that is caused by some sharp humor for the most part that aboun-  
deth in the stomach, especially in the mouth of it, from Cause.



from whence corrupt vapours arising do ascend into the Head.

**Signes.**

It may be known by that gnawing and biting pain they feel in their head, by their proneness and desire to vomit; also if the sick fast and suffer hunger long, their pain is more vehement; for through long abstinence, the malice of the humour encreaseth.

**Cure by vomiting**

In the cure of this disease, outward medicines will do no good; the best way of cure is by vomiting, but first prepare the humours by giving Vinegar of Squils, two or three spoonfuls, or four, if two or three work not, divers mornings before the vomit, (which may be infusion of Crocus metallorum half an Ounce), for many times the humours are viscus and stick fast.

**Consider the strength of nature in the proportion of the Vomit.**

**Purging.**

If you suppose the stomach be furred after vomiting, give a scruple of Mastich pills every night going to bed for a week or such a matter.

As for strengthening the stomach after the disease is cured, I shall speak plentifully when I come to speak of the diseases in the stomach.

So also if the headach come from the liver or spleen, or any part, you shall have plentiful remedies when I come to speak of the places where the cause lies, which is needless here; for take away the cause, the effect ceaseth.

## CHAP. IX.

πρωαλαλ-  
γία.

Coming  
of drunk-  
ennes.  
Cause.

### *Of Headach caused by Drunkenness.*

**T**He causes are evident enough; for hot Wines, Strong-Waters, and strong drinks fill the brain

brain with vapours, and so much the more if the brain be hot by nature, if the *os triquetrum* be close shut, and the sutoriums close shut; for they bear drink less before they be drunk than others in which they are more open.

The cure consisteth chiefly in these two things **Cure**  
Evacuation, Refrigeration. consisting  
in evacu-  
ation and  
refrigera-  
tion.

If the Wine be indigested, give a vomit in the first place.

If the headach remain after, you must use refrigeration to drive back the vapours that ascend into the head; that doth especially above all things, Oyl, wherein Ivy-leaves have been boiled, by anointing the head, and temples, and forehead.

To prevent drunkenness are many medicines left by the Ancients to posterity, but for mine own part, I have never tried any of them, as to eat six or seven bitter Almonds every morning fasting; to drink a draught of Wormwood-beer first in the morning; also to burn swallows in a crucible feathers and all, eat a little of the ashes of them in the morning. **Preventi-  
ons.**

CHAP. X.

*Of Headach caused of Feavers.*

*κίραλα-  
γία.  
coming of  
Fevers.*

**I**F Headach molest those that have Feavers, you must consider whether the body be laxative or not; for astringency in Fevers always causeth Headach; if it be, then you must consider whether it began with the fever, or came only the fever increasing near the Crisis, or when the Moon comes to the opposition of that sign and degree she was in **Præſagia:**  
Ed  
Vel cali  
vel signi,  
incertum  
est, puta  
signi.  
at

at the decumbiture ; if she or her beams reach but the place, give no physick ; for vomiting or flux of blood by the nostrils will follow.

**Cause.**

But if the headach began at first with the fever, it is caused through vapours dispersed abroad through the vehemency of the fever, as it were boiling up and ascending into the brain, and the brain also for the most part in this disease is weak, and not able to repell it, but fit to receive it.

**Cure.**

*Tolle causam tollitur effectus.*

If age permit, you may use bleeding. If strength permit, you may use cupping-glasses, but the chief remedy is by remedying the feaver ; for the cause being taken away, the effect ceaseth ; and I intend hereafter to write a Tractate only of Feavers, to which I now refer it.

## CHAP. XI.

κεφαλαῖα

*Of the Head-ach κεφαλαλγία.*

The dignotion of  
κεφαλαῖα  
from  
κεφαλαλγία.

Κεφαλαῖα in Greek, in Latin *Cephalæa*, in English an old and inveterate headach; it may be known from κεφαλαλγία by these notes; it hath been of long continuance exceeding painful, hard to cease; every light occasion (as noise, loud speech, clear light, moving, drinking of Wine, strong smells, or the like) causes sharp or violent fits; the diseased desires to lie in the dark, to be quiet, often supposing that their heads are struck with a hammer; also some do feel those things that are about their head, as though they were bruised or racked; this disease sometimes doth continue painful always, sometimes it comes by fits, with intermission, so that sometimes they think themselves



selves perfectly whole. *This disease doth vex Women more than men.* In some the *pia Mater* (or skin that knits the senses together, which lyeth round the brain within the *dura Mater*) is vexed, in some only the *Pericranium*, or skin that covereth the skull round) is vexed.

It is caused either by abundance of blood and Cause. other humours, or by the sharpness of the humours contained either within or without the skull, inflaming the head; also it is caused through weakness of the head.

If the pain invade the sick with heaviness, it sheweth the disease to proceed of fulness and abundance of humours; if it come with pricking, gnawing and shooting, it betokeneth sharpness of humours; if it beat like pulses, it betokeneth inflammation; if there be felt distention or stretching out, without beating, or heaviness, it comes of wind; if there be beating with it, it is a hot wind; if heaviness, there are humours as well as wind; if the pain be felt superficially, or outwardly, the disease lies in the *Pericranium*; if inwardly, it lies in the *pia Mater*, and then is there always a pain in the roots of the eyes; for the *Tunicles* of the eyes have their beginning from the Brain. Signes.

As for diet and air, the cause being known you may easily gather it out of the former Chapter. Cure.

If it come through abundance of humours, you may in the first place let blood.

Oyl of Vervain used in Uction, is an approved medicine, unless there be inflammations or feavers joined with it; for them use Oyl of Fleabane, both considered as in the former Chapters.

Have a great care that sleep be moderate, and the body soluble.



You may also (for fear of Relapsing) purge the head with strong Gargarismes, made with juice of Leeks, Pellitory of *Spain*, long Pepper, Mustard, or the like.

Or by sneezing, if the infirmity lie within the scull.

## CHAP. XII.

*Of the Megrims.*

*ἡμικρανία*  
*via.*

Descrip-  
tion.

*ἡμικρανία* in Greek; in Latin also *Hemicrania*; in English the *Megrims*; is a painful evil, lying in the one half of the head only; the right side, or the left; and is distinguished by the seam that runneth all along the scull, from the middle part of the forehead to the hinder part of the head, or nape of the neck; this pain cometh often by fits; and in some the grief is felt without the scull; in some within, and that deep in the brain; in some, in the Muscles near the Temples.

Cause.

It is caused by ascending or flowing of many vapours or humours, either hot or cold; either by the Veins, or by the Arteries, or by both; and sometime it proceeds from the brain it self, thrusting out its excrements and superfluities when the passages are stopped.

Signes.

The Signes whereby you may know whether vapours or humours do abound, whether they be hot or cold, whether within the scull, or without, may be drawn out of the former Chapters; only this I add; if the pain lie in the *Pericranium*, the pain is so vehement that they cannot suffer their heads to be touched with ones hand.

Their

Their Diet, what they should eat, and what Diet. they should elchew, may be gathered out of the former Chapters, according to the diversity of the causes; yet let them by all means avoid all such things as *send sharp vapors up into the head, as, Note!* *Garlique, Onions, Mustard, Raddish roots, &c.*

If the Infirmitie lie without the Scull, as most commonly it doth, comb the head; if the pain lie on the right side, with a comb made of the right horn of a Ram, (I suppose it were best the Ram were killed when the Sun is in *Aries*) if it lie on the left side, with a comb made of the left horn of a Ram; and this (for ought I know) may do it, if the disease lie within the Scull. Cure.  
Or at least when Mars is there.

If it lie near the Temples amongst the Muscles, rub them often (either with your hand, or with a cloth) till they be hot, when the pain is over, and that many times remedieth the Disease if it lie there.

Also *Euphorbium* mixed with Oyl, and put into the ear on that side the pain lies; take more or less *Euphorbium*, according as the parties senses are dull or quick; a scruple of *Euphorbium* is enough for an ounce of Oyl, and one drop is sufficient to put into the ear at one time.

Also *Euphorbium* dissolved in Vinegar, and applied by way of Uction to the grieved part of the head, profiteth much.

*But beware you use not Euphorbium, if the disease come of hot Humours, or Vapours.*

Also Earthworms beaten to powder, Snails, Peach-kernels, *Goats-dung mingled with Vinegar of Note!* *Squils*, are Medicinal.

If it comes of hot Humours, use those Medicines prescribed for the headach coming of hot humors.

If it come of plenitude, use blood-letting.

*In fine*, purge the Humour that causeth the Disease.

### CHAP. XIII.

#### *Of Vertigo or swimming in the Head.*

Descrip-  
tion.

**V**ertigo, is a Disease wherein a man thinketh all that he sees turns round; it is a Disease my self have been often for many years terribly vexed withal, insomuch, that at the last I many times fell down in a swoon, and fainted; *This Disease often turneth to the Falling-sickness*, as it had almost done in my self, though after much and vast expence of Physick, one vomit absolutely cured me; therefore I shall be more large in the signs of this Disease.

Cause.

This Disease is caused through inordinate moving of Vapours that are windy, contained in certain parts of the Brain; this Disease is caused either because the Brain it self is ill-affected, or of Vapours ascending from the stomach thither; the Brain it self is offended by a Humour Aerial, from whence a windy spirit moveth inordinatly about, and troubleth the apprehension; so that all things the man seeth, seem to turn round also; the Brain is offended by the mouth of the stomach when windy exhalations are carried from thence to the Brain, which happeneth by corruption or putrefaction in the stomach, the vapours of which being penetrating, move about the Brain.

Galen makes a great stir, and so also doth Hippocrates to prove two sorts of Vertigo, the one called

*Time-*



*Tenebricosa Vertigo*; of some *Scotoma*: and this, say they, is the most dangerous, because it often turns to the Falling-sickness. Indeed I grant, the dark *Vertigo* turneth soonest to the Falling-sickness, because it cometh of *Atrabilis*, or Choler adust; but *Fuchsius* thinks they err that think the Diseases to be two, because they differ a little in quality: and truly so do I. All *Galen's* words may not be Authentick; no, nor *Hippocrates* his neither: and neither *Fuchsius*, nor my self, were, nor are so simple, but we know Choler yellow will turn black and adust in the Tunicle of the Stomack, and cause no other difference that changing the quality, not the nature of the Disease. But enough of this, I proceed to the Signes.

A darkness or mist appeareth before their eyes *Signes*: that are troubled with this Disease, and that upon every light occasion, especially if they drink but a cup of strong drink, or wine; or if they turn round: for it chanceth to them if they turn round once, as it doth to others when they turn round often times, so that sometimes they fall down. Also the same effect it brings to him, to see another man, or a wheel, or the water run round: therefore let such objects be avoided; for the vital spirits beholding it, turn about also, and so the moving of the Humour that causeth the Disease, is troubled, unequal and inordinate.

When this Disease lyeth in the brain only, without relation to the stomach, there followeth sound in the ears, pain in the head, sometimes vehement, and heaviness there; also the smelling and other senses are detrimented: their fits are chiefly when the Sun doth heat them, or when their head is hot by some other means; for Heat doth dissolve



the Humours, and then they turn about the Brain.

And indeed for ought I know, a cleer Sunne shine day is hurtful for those in whom the Disease proceeds from the Stomack, as mine did, and found the same extreemly prejudicial to me.

Those in whom the Disease proceedeth from the Stomack, feel a gnawing in the Stomack before the fit comes, and a disposition to vomit, and are as though they were heart-burnt.

Note.

*Also thus you may know of what Humor the Disease comes, by the apparent colour of things to their eyes: for if they appear yellow, the Disease comes of yellow Choler: if reddish or bloody, it comes of blood,*

Note.

*and is apt to fall into a Frenzy or madness; if dark, it comes of Atra bilis, and is a forerunner of the Falling-*

Note.

*sickness, or Apoplexy; And thus much for example sake.*

Also these Diseases are most violent in that time of the year that suiteth best with their nature; as Choler in Summer, Melancholy in Autumn, &c.

Cure.

If this Disease be caused by Vapours that ascend from the Stomack, as mine did, Vomiting is a speedy cure, and the only cure I could find.

Cautions.

For only that wind cause h Whirl-winds.

Let the sick avoid the beams both of Sun and Moon; all Winds, especially South Winds: nor let him behold any thing that moves round, nor any deep thing.

Let him avoid fasting and fulness, all meats that engender wind, that are of a dilative quality, and send Vapours up to the head: such be Milk, Onions, Garlick, Leeks.

Let him eschew sleep in the day, saith Galen: but for mine own part, I found ease in nothing else.

Let

Let his Meat be of good Juice, and good Diet.  
gestion.

If the Disease come of Blood, use Blood-let-  
ting.

Let the Sick avoid perturbation of mind, anger,  
fear, sadness, loud crying and singing.

Let him not keep his head too hot, nor abide  
in an Air too hot, or too cold; and let him stir his  
head as little as may be.

In a word, keep his Stomack clean with Vomits,  
and his head with *Pil. Alephanginae*.

*Acetum scilliticum* is a soveraign remedy, and  
Southernwood is the Herb proper for the Di-  
sease.

---

## CHAP. XIV.

### *Of Frenzie.*

*Phrenitis.*

*Phrenitis* in Greek, in Latin also *Phrenitis*, in Descrip-  
English a Frenzie, is a disease that troubles the tion.  
mind, dangerous and difficult to cure: it differs  
from madness thus; a feaver ever accompanies  
a Frenzie, but never madness. Definitio-  
on.

A Frenzie is a continual madness and fury, Division.  
with raging and vexation of mind, accompanied  
with an acute Feaver, caused through inflamma-  
tion of the Brain, or the films thereof.

There are three internal senses in the head; Three  
Imagination, Judgment, Memory; and a man may sorts of  
Frenzies.  
be Frenetick (or as our common English word  
saith, Frantick) in any of these.

Some are Frenetick only in Imagination; ima-  
gining they see things they do not, & yet do give

a right judgment of things they do see: and remember every man, and call him by name: in such fantasie only is distempered.

2. Others apprehend things truly, yet judg falsly of them; as a Patient I had, that judged his father would kill him, and therefore fled his presence; as also, that he was some great person. There the seat of Judgment is chiefly vexed.

3. The third is compound of these two, and they err in every thing, and know no body, nor remember any thing; and in such the Brain is totally distempered.

**Cause.** The Frenzy is caused of abundance of Choler, and Cholerick Blood, either in the Brain, or films thereof; and if the Choler be adust, the Disease is vehement and pernicious.

**Signs.** Besides a terrible Feaver and Madnes, for the most part they cannot sleep; if they do sleep at all it is troublesome: many times when they do sleep, they start up out of it suddenly, and rage, and cry out furiously; they babble words without order or sense, and very seldom answer directly to a question; their Water many times is thin and cleer; and if it be so, it is so much the worle; many times the softlier you speak to them, the louder they answer.

Their Eyes are blood shotten, bleared and staring, and sometime dry, and sometimes full of sharp and scalding tears; most of them pull and tear all the clothes about them to pieces; their Pulses are small, weak and slow, and they fetch their breath but seldom: that which cometh of Blood, causeth inordinate laughter; and Choler, immoderate fury: also such must be bound in their beds; they forget every thing speedily that they

either



either do or say. I have seen one call for a Chamber-pot, and so soon as he had it, either had forgot what it was, or else forgot to piss in it.

Concerning the usage of the Sick; if it be Air. Winter, let the air be warm; if in Summer, let it be cold; a whited wall is best; for diversity of colours or pictures are naught.

Some are troubled with light in their Fits, and some with darkness; therefore you had best try them both, and let him have light that is afraid of darkness, and keep him dark that is offended with light: but if the Sick be indifferent between both, let the strongest have light, and keep the weakest darkest.

Let his dearest friends come to him, and let some speak friendly to him, and let some of them speak harshly and roughly to him; for there is no rule with such persons, unless they stand in awe of some body.

If strength permit, let him bleed largely in the Bleeding-arm, and two or three dayes after under the tongue.

Keep his body laxative.

Force him to sleep with *Opium*; if his body be strong, you need not fear to give him four or five grains at a time, also hang soporiferous things about his Head, as Mandrakes, Nightshade, Poppy, Henbane, &c. and anoint his Head and Temples with oyl of Poppy, if he sleep not without these.

Stool.  
Sleep.

Let his drink be water, in which Cinnamon Drink hath been boyled.

Let his meat be exceeding little, and let that Meat little be of very good and speedy digestion.

Also I have found by experience, *Castoreum* to Cure.  
be



be very medicinal for the Disease, taken inwardly.

For other Medicines, your best way is to labour to remove that Humour which causeth the Disease: of which Medicines you may be furnished in the peculiar Chapter belonging to the particular Humour.

Of the Lethargie.

CHAP. XV.

Descrip-  
tion.

**I**N direct oppositions to a Frenzy, is the Disease called a Lethargy; which causeth sluggishness, and an inexpugnable desire to sleep.

γῆθη.  
αργης.

This word *Lethargie*, is a Greek word, compounded of λῆθη, which signifies Forgetfulness; and αργης which signifies slothful, or dull: and therefore instead of *Veturnus*, the common Latin word, it might be better (or at least better in my opinion) be called *Oblivio iners*, a sluggish forgetfulness.

Names.

κῆρος

Subeth.

κῶμα.

It is affir-

med by

many

good Phi-

sicians,

that there

is such a

Disease as

Coma Vi-

gilans, but

as yet I never saw any possessed with it.

This sluggish Disease hath gotten many names; it is called by some Grecians κῆρος, of the Arabians *Subeth*, of some Grecians κῶμα; and this κῶμα, say they, is of two sorts: *Coma somnolentum*, or a sleepy *Coma*: the other called *Vigilans coma*, or a waking *Coma*; because such as have Lethargies seem to be awake many times when they are not. Many have thought these diseases to be all different, because different places have given it different names; yet all confess the cause of them all to be the same, and then the difference can be only in the Complexion of the party grieved.

It is caused of Flegm, which cooleth the Brain Cause. overmuch, and moistneth it, and thereby provoketh sleep.

They are always in a profound and dead sleep; **Signes.** their Pulse is great, and striketh seldom, and beateth as though it were in water; they fetch breath seldom and weakly; and are so sluggish and sleepy, that they can hardly be forced to answer to a question; sometimes they will open their eyes, if you cry aloud to them, but they instantly shut them again: they are exceeding forgetful, and always talk idly in their sleep; they gape and yawn often, and sometimes keep their mouth open, as though they had forgot to shut it: some are constive, others laxative; their Urine is like Beasts **Gure.** Urine, stinking; some tremble and sweat all over.

Let the Chamber wherein the Sick doth lie, **Air.** be very light, and very warm.

Let his Diet be such things as extenuate, cut **Diet.** and dry, & let it be seasoned with Anniseed, Cumminseed, Pepper, Cinnamon, Ginger, Cloves, &c.

For Pot-herbs, let him use Sparagus, Parsley, Fennel, and such like: and after eating, bind the extreame parts (*viz. the Thighs*) hard, that the Vapours ascend not up into the Head.

You may burn Brimstone under his Nose, or *Nasalia.* *assa fetida* to awake him.

Give him strong Gargarisms made with Pelli- **Garga-** tory of *Spain*, and Mustard: also you may safely **risms.** put a whole spoonful of Mustard into his mouth at once.

Also you may boil Time, Penny-royal and *Origanum* in Vinegar, and dip a sponge in it, and hold it always to his Nose.

You may shave off his Hair, and keep his Head  
always

always moistned with Vinegar of Roses ; also it is excellent to let it drop down from some high place upon the crown of his Head.

**Sneezing**

Provoke him often to sneeze with white Hele-bore.

**Clifters.**

Also in this Disease you may safely administer sharp and scowring Clifters, with Collocynthis, Agrick, Electuary, *Benedicta laxativa*, *Species hiera picre*, and the like, in the common decoction.

**Purge.**

The Disease declining, purge Flegm.

*Castoreum* is also exceeding medicinal for this Disease, either taken inwardly, or applyed outwardly.

## CHAP. XVI.

### Of Forgetfulness.

**Cause.**

**T**He loss of Memory chanceth sometime alone, and sometimes Reason is hurt with it.

It is caused of Lethargies, and other soporiferous Diseases; for they being ended, many times leave Forgetfulness behind them, and then it comes of a cold distemper. This coldness hath sometimes driness joined with it, and sometimes moisture, and sometimes nothing but a bare distemper; to know this, you must diligently observe the causes whence it ariseth.

The causes are two; internal, external: if they be internal, either abundance of Flegm, or Melancholy, is the cause of it; if there be no signes of these abounding, then it comes of some external cause, (unless it come through extream old age.)

The external causes you may know by the relation



lation of the sick, or those that are about him ; if any disease have newly passed, and so turned into Oblivion, if Medicins were applied outwardly, or administred inwardly, which extreamly cooled the brain ; or if it came of study, watching, &c.

If the Memory be but a little hurt, it shews the *Signes* brain to be but a little cooled ; if reason be also hurt, then the disease is vehement.

If it come of a dry distemper, the sick watcheth much, and can hardly be brought to sleep.

If moisture only offend, then are they heavy, inclined to sleep, and their sleeps are long and troublesome.

If cold be joyned with the moisture, it is a perfect Lethargy, though perhaps but breeding, and then the excrements are many at the mouth and nose, proceeding from the brain.

If Melancholy be the cause, he will not be very desirous of sleep, nor void excrements from his brain ; besides all circumstances, and the state of his whole body incline to cold and driness.

*For to give a true judgment of a disease, you must consider the complexion of the party, the region that he lives in, the time of the year, the state of the air, and the diet he hath used.*

Let his diet be different according to the cause of his disease ; as for example, if it come of coldness, let it be hot, &c. *Diet.*

But whatever the cause be, the air must not be cold, nor the room dark, nor any windows open North nor South ; for the one cooleth, the other I should think the *Cautions* stuffeth the head. *I should think the*

If it come through age, Physick avails little. *East were worst.*  
If the Memory fail suddenly, either *Falling-sickness*, *Prognostic* or *Apoplexy* is following, for cure of which use such *ca.*  
*means*



means of prevention, as you shall be taught to cure them when they are come in their proper Chapters.

If it come of other causes, viz. of cold, heat the brain; if of driness, moisten the brain.

Names.

Things medicinal, are *Castoreum*, *Oleum de lateribus*, Rew, Balm, Betony, Rosemary, Marjoram.

Of compound, *confectio anacardina*, *Diamoschum dulce*, *Diambra*, Mithridate, Theriacha. These not only remedy memory lost, but help, and mend it, being dull.

## CHAP. XVII.

### Of Catalepsis.

Cure.

Κατοχή

κατάληψις

Detentio,

occupatio,

congelatio.

Descrip-

tion.

Κατοχή or κατάληψις in Greek, is called in Latin *Occupatio*, Detention, and *Deprehensio*; Modern Writers call it *Congelatio*; in English it is called Congelation, or Taking, and by the Ignorant struck with a Planet.

It is a sudden detention and taking both of body and mind, both sense and moving being lost, the sick remaining in the same figure of body wherein he was taken; whether he sit or lie, or whether his mouth & eyes were open or shut, as they are taken in the disease, so they remain.

Cause.

This disease is a mean between a Lethargy and a Frenzy, for it cometh of a melancholy humour; Therefore in respect of coldness it agreeth with a Lethargy, and in respect of driness with a Frenzy; and the effects are in a medium between them both; Sometimes abundance of blood is joyned with the melancholy humour, and sometimes on-

ly pure melancholy ; both invade the hinder part of the brain.

They that are taken with this disease, are al- **Signs.**  
ways taken suddenly ; both speech and sense are taken from him ; he neither speaketh nor heareth, his breath scarcely to be perceived ; he lies like a dead man, his pulse is small, weak, and very thick ; his egestion and urine are either very little or none at all, which seems to proceed from want of sense ; for the sick abounds (most commonly) with moisture ; *For Melancholy is an humour dry in operation, not in quality ;* Their face is sometimes red, and that is, when blood is mingled with the melancholy ; and sometimes swarth, and then pure melancholy oppresseth ; the eyes in this disease remain immoveable, as though they were frozen.

The Diet is different according to the cause ; **Diet.**  
only in general let him avoid all such meats and drinks as send vapours up into the head ; also *water is hurtful because it swelleth the spleen.* Barly-water wherein Cinamon hath been boiled is good.

If blood abound, and strength and years per- **Bleeding.**  
mit, let him bleed in the Cephalique of the arm, as much as strength will permit.

If Melancholy abound, cleanse the gutts with **Clifters.**  
Clifters made of *things proper for melancholy* : such be *borrage, bugloss, fumitory, time, epithimum, polipodium, Senna, coffia fistula, confilio Hamech, &c.*

If the head be hot, cool it with oyl of fleabane ; **Refrige-**  
if too cold, heat it with oyl of vervain. **ration.**

Black Hellebore corrected with Cinnamon is **Cure.**  
very medicinal ; so is Mother of Time.

If trembling accompany this disease, give Castoreum.

As for other remedies, you may find them in the Chapters of Frenzie, and Lethargy before; and in the Chapter of Melancholy, which is to follow after.

## CHAP. XVIII.

*Of the Apoplexy.*

*Ἀποπλεξία.*

Definitio-  
on.

*Ἀποπλεξία* in Greek and Latin, is also called an Apoplexy in English; and is a disease wherein the fountain and original of all the sinews is affected, and so every part of the body doth suddenly lose sense and motion, throughout the whole body.

Cause.

If the stopping come only in one half of the body, it is called the Palsy; of which hereafter.

The Apoplexy is caused by a gross, tough, and clammy humour, (ingendred for the most part by drunkenness;) which (being crude) fills the principal ventricles of the brain.

It is caused also by a fall or a blow, which bruisseth and shaketh the brain, and causeth the humours to flow thither.

Also those that are brought up in hot Countries, when they come to live in cold Countries, many times the cold only congealeth the humours, and causeth the disease.

Signes.

There goeth before this disease a sharp pain in the head, a swelling of the veins in the neck, the Vertigo and brightness before the eyes, coldness of the extreame parts without cause known, paining of the whole body, slowness to move, and gnawing of the teeth, while they sleep; their Urine



is little in quantity, and black, like rust or canker of metal, and hath a residence like meal; they lack sense altogether, and lie with their eyes shut, as though they were asleep and snort.

The vehemency of this disease, may be known by their impediments in breathing; if their breathing differ but little from another mans that is in health, it shews the disease is but weak; but when they can hardly be perceived to breath at all, it is the strongest Apoplexy: and little better is theirs where the breath seems to be stopped for a while and then fret with great violence.

*This disease happens most frequently to aged people, Note. Legmatick folke, and to such as use such diet as encreaseth flegm.*

*This disease is seldom cured, and seldomer but it Note. leaves the dead Palsey behind it; and then it is but half cured.*

*A strong Apoplexy for the most part kills a man in Note. four and twenty hours; many times in half the time.*

*Bleeding is a desperate physick for an Apoplexy, well Note. Bleeding. unfitting such a desperate disease; for it kills or cures Note. quickly.*

*Provoke him to Stool, with mighty sharp and Stool. strong Clisters.*

*Bind the thighs hard, and rub them vehemently. Liga-*

*You may shave the head, and bath it with Oyl <sup>ments.</sup> of Rue, Camomel, or Dill. <sup>Unction.</sup>*

*You may fasten Cupping-glasses good store to Cupping. the shoulders.*

*You may burn stinking things under his nose, Nafalia. Castoreum, Asa fetida, Saga penum, Galbanum.*

*You may provoke him to sneeze, with white Sneezing Bellebore.*

*You may apply Castoreum, and Euphorbium, D with*

Cucufa.  
Vomit.

Lac Sul-  
phuris.

I take it  
doth not  
procure  
Vomit,  
but is, di-  
aphoretic-  
cal.

with Vinegar to his head.

You may provoke him to vomit with Turbith Minerale, Mercurius Vita, or Lac Sulphuris, which is the best medicine I know.

Thus much for the cure of an Apoplexy, if it may be cured.

## CHAP. XIX.

### Of the Dead Palsy in one side.

παράλυ-  
σις.

Definiti-  
on.

παρ-  
πληγία.

παράλυσις in Greek, in Latin *Resolutio*, in English the dead Palsy; 'tis a disease wherein the one half of the body, either the right side or the left, doth lose either sense or moving, or both, either totally or partially.

But note here that the Palsy that followeth the Apoplexy, is properly and particularly called by the Greeks *παρπληγία*.

In the Palsy sometimes sense only is lost, and not moving, sometimes moving and not sense, and sometimes both sense and moving; yet the Greek word *παράλυσις*, signifies properly loss of motion.

Quest.

A word to satisfy the curious, that may ask why sometimes sense only, and sometimes motion only, should be lost?

Answ.

You must note that the faculty of motion, as well as that of sense, flows from the brain, as from the fountain, and is derived from thence by the nerves to the instruments of sense & motion, and so either sense or motion is lost, according as the sinews that convey sense or motion are affected in the disease; therefore it being considered

that divers members participate in two kinds of sinews, the one for sense, the other for motion, yet the doubt is easily cleared. One sinew may be hurt, and motion is lost; the other may be hurt, and sense is lost; then sense is lost and motion remains; both are hurt, and then farewell (*pro tempore*) sense and motion.

If members participate but of one sinew, as few do, (perhaps none) yet *Gallen* saith some do, and I rather at present I cannot contradict him; lets vertue is required for feeling, then for motion, saith he; and so if the sinew be much hurt, sense and motion are both lost; if it be but little hurt, only motion is lost.

The matter indeed is scarce worth disputing for; or writing of; and therefore I proceed.

The Original of this disease lies sometimes in the brain, and sometimes in the marrow of the back.

If the disease lie in the back, (as but seldom it doth) then is the face firm, and then sometimes half, sometimes the whole body is paralytick, according as the half or whole marrow of the back is vitiated.

If it come from the brain, it lies only in some particular Pellicles thereof; for if the whole brain be vitiated, it is an Apoplexy.

These things being first duly considered, we come to the cause.

It is caused through vehement and inordinate cold, or through gross and clammy Humours that stop the passages, that the animal vertue cannot pass freely from the Centre to the Circumference.

If it come from the back, it is caused through



Inflammation, or hard swelling, without sense called *Schirrus*, hapning at the back-bone, or nigh to it, or other sinewy part, dependant thereon; whereby the sinews are pressed together, and so stopped, that the animal virtue cannot pass. It may happen by a blow or wound.

The disease is so apparent, that it needs no Signes.

Prognostica.

*The Palsy is no acute or sharp Disease, and for the most part is curable.*

*It chanceth (for the most part) to ancient people, and beginneth (commonly) in the Winter time.*

*If the Palsy come by a cut or wound, it is incurable, and very difficult, if the Paralitique members wane, or wax less and less; for then it sheweth the parts to want spirits natutal as well as animal.*

Pier.

Let his Diet be extenuating and drying, let his Meat be easie of Digestion, and roasted, viz. Birds that frequent dry grounds, Almonds, Raisons of the Sun, Pine Nuts.

Herbs.

For Pot-herbs, let him use Fennel, Pursley, Hyssop, Marjoram, Sage, and Savory.

Caution.

Let him eschew Water-fowl, Fish, and all other meats that are cold and moist, and flegmatick.

Air.

Let the Air he abides in be hot and dry; if not, make it so by Art.

Drink.

Let him drink no Wine but *Hippocras*, and let him use Cinnamon in all his drink, or broth.

It is good for him to endure as much thirst as he can.

Sleep.

Let his sleeps be but mean, and let him not sleep at all in the day.

Exercise.

Let him use as much exercise as well as he can.

Mirth.

Let him be merry and cheerful, and fly anger, vexation, and other perturbation of the mind.

If there be signs of Plenitude, you may draw Bleeding: out blood (moderately, for fear of over cooling) of the sound side; else forbear.

If he have not a Stool once a day, provoke him Clusters. with a Clister.

*Acetum Scilliticum*, or Vinegar of Squils taken Cure: two spoonfulls every morning fasting, is a sovereign medicine.

So is also *Castoreum*.

If it lie in the Brain, sneezing is good, which Sneezing you may provoke with white Hellebore, but let it be in the evening, the party in bed, and their head wrapped warm, for fear of after-claps.

Also use Unctions to the nape of the neck (for Unctions there the marrow of the back hath its passage to the Brain) use first weak ones, such as Oyl, Camomel, Dill St. Johns Wort, or Earthworms. Then after some days, such as are stronger, as Oyl of Bricks, or Tile-stones, *Castoreum* and *Euphorbium*. Where- with you may anoint all the paralitique members, wrapping them up hot afterwards in a Fox skin.

More properly the Brain hath its passage to the spinalis medulla. Bath.

Also you may make a Bath with St. Johns Wort, Rosemary, Stæchas, Sage, Marjoram, and Camomel, boiled in water, wherewith you may bath the paralitique members before you anoint them.

Also this Cerecloth is excellent to apply to the paralitique members. Take of Oyl two Drams, Oyl of Pepper, one Ounce and a half, Oyl of *Euphorbium* two Drams, *Aqua vite* two Ounces and a half; juice of Sage and Marjoram, or Cowslips, of each two Ounces and a half, *Galanga* three Drams; Pellitory of the wall and Pepper, of each a dram; Stæchas and Rosemary,

**Cucufa.** of each two Drams, *Euphorbium* one Dram and a half; boil it till the *Aqua vite* be consumed, then strain it, and put wax enough to it to make a Cerecloth.

Also you may make a quilt for his head with Hyfop, Marjoram, St. *Johns* Wort, Sage, Rue, Bay-leaves, of each two Drams; Spikenard, Mastich, *Castoreum*, and *Stæchas*, of each two Scruples; Cloves, Mace, Nutmegs, of each one Scruple; Red-Rose-leaves well dried, half a handful, make of them a quilt, as you are taught Chapter 3.

Use these medicines to the Head, if the Disease lies there; to the nape of the neck, and the back-bone, if the disease lie there.

## CHAP. XX.

### *Of the Palsie in one Member.*

**A**Lthough any expert man may draw out of what hath been written before, the cure of the resolution of any member, the radix being the same, yet to satisfie the unskilful, I thought good to write a line or two.

If any member be paralytique, search from what root the sinews come that supply that member, and mend it there at the root with the former medicines.

There is also a kind of Palsie called by the  
 σπᾶσμος. Greeks σπᾶσμος κύνικος, in Latin *Tortura oris*, in  
 κύνικος. English wrineis of the mouth; this you may cure  
 also by the aforesaid Medicines; besides, you may  
 hold a Looking-glass before him, that he may see  
 what an ugly face he makes, and so labour to  
 mend it.



## CHAP. XXI.

## Of the Falling-sickness.

**E**πιληψία in Greek, the Latins call it *Morbus Epilepti-*  
*Comitialis*, and the English the *Falling-sickness*.

It is a Convulsion, drawing and stretching of all the parts of the whole body, not continually, but at sundry times, with hurt of the mind and sense. It is so called, because it attacheth both the sense, and feeling of the head, and also of the mind.

There be three causes of the Falling sickness. Three

The first is caused when the disease lyeth only causes of  
in the Brain; and that is caused two ways. Falling-

1. When gross, tough, and clammy Humours sickness.  
flegmatick, stop the passage of the Spirits Animal 1.  
in the Pellicles of the Brain. 2. When the same See my  
Opilation is caused by Choler. Anatomy

Secondly, It is caused through the evil affect of the  
of the Stomack, sending up vapours thither, Brain,  
which the Brain labours to repell, and by the re- 2  
luctancy causeth the disease.

Thirdly, It is caused through a cold Air which 3.  
the Patient may feel creeping up from one mem- Signes.  
ber or another, to the Brain; but this chanceth  
but seldom, especially in these Climates.

There goeth before this disease, an unwise state of the body and mind; sadness, forgetfulness, troublesome dreams, headach, continual fulness in the head, especially in anger, paleness in the face, inordinate moving of the tongue; many bite their tongues, as soon as the fit takes them they fall down, their limbs are drawn together, they

snort & sometimes cry out: many tremble when the fit comes upon them, and run round, but the peculiar sign of this disease is foaming at the mouth.

*This disease happeneth most to young folks.*

Air.

Let the Air the sick abides in, be hot and dry if the disease be caused of Flegm; let it be cold

Diet.

and moist, if it be caused of Choler.

Vomit.

Cure.

Methinks

I might

have be-

flowed

the pains

to have

quoted a

few more

Medicins,

yet seeing

'tis as 'tis,

see my

Receipts.

Let him eschew all meats that are hard of digestion, and stopping, and such as are of a dilative quality, and all Wine, the older the worse.

If the Disease proceed from the Stomach, cleared by a vomit.

The best remedy, which is most sure and approved, is, a Male piony root dug up, *Sol* in *Aries*, rising on *Sunday* morning, the Moon encreasing, *Aries* culminating; hung about their necks; which by a hidden planetary virtue cureth it. Also the juice of Piony roots dug up at that time, and made into a sirup with Sugar, taken inwardly, doth the like.

## CHAP. XXII.

### *Of Convulsion and Cramps.*

Definitio-  
on.

*Σπασμος* in Greek; in Latin *Convulsio*; in English *Convulsion* and *Cramp*: is a Disease in which the sinews are drawn and pluckt up together against ones will.

Kinds.

There are divers kinds of this Disease, three of these kinds lie in the neck.

The first is called in Greek *τέτανος*; in Latin *Distentio*; it is when the neck remaineth altogether immovable; so that it cannot be turned any way, but must alway be held straight forward.

The

## his Physical, Chyrurgical Remains.

41

The second is called *Tensio ad anteriora*, when the head or neck is drawn down towards the brest.

2.

The third is called *Tensio ad posteriora*, when the head is drawn backward.

3.

The fourth kind of Convulssion is that which usually is called the Cramp, and is a drawing together of the sinews of some particular limb.

4.

The fifth is that which is usually called Convulsion fits, and a wreathing or drawing up together all the sinews on the one side of the body.

5.

This disease is caused through fasting, fulness, Cause. pricking of an Artery, or the biting of a venomous Beast, that the venom come to the Nerve.

The fifth of these is only mortal, and takes away many young Children.

For Children, Spirit of *Castoreum*, *Aqua paralytica Mathioli*, *Aqua antepileptica*, *Langii*, are medicinal. Cure.

For Aged people ; if it come of fulness, purge Of ful- and vomit, then use the precedent medicines. ness.

If it come of fasting, it is more perilous ; the Fasting. best remedy that I know then, is the decoction of *China* roots.

If it come by pricking an Artery, as many times Pricking it doth in blood-letting through the unskilful- of a ness of the Chyrurgion, or unruliness of the Pa- nerve. tient. If it be much hurt, the only way I know, is to cut it quite asunder, and lose the use of the Limb, to save your life.

If it come by stinging of any venomous crea- stinging ture, make the wound bigger, and draw out the of vene- poison with *Venice Treacle* appl'd to it Plasterwise. mous creatures.

Finally, wear for the Cramp, a Ring made of a Rams horn, the Ram slain *Sol* in *Aries*, in the hour of the Sun, he either rising or culminating.

CHAP.



## CHAP. XXIII.

## Of the Mare.

Ἡρίαι-  
τις.

**H**ῑρίαιτις in Greek, in Latin *Incubus*, is a Disease that happens only in the night, to people in bed, wherein they conceive themselves overpressed with a great weight, which almost strangles them.

The ridiculous conceits of the Vulgar.

The simple sort call it the *Mare*, and conceit and affirm, that they feel it with their hand; and hear it fall down in the Chamber: yea, I have heard one affirm, she heard it come in at the Gate. The Truth (or rather falshood) of all this, will appear in the description.

Cause.

This Disease is caused of excessive drinking, also of continual rawness of the Stomack; whence are sent gross and cold Vapours, which fill the ventricles of the Brain, letting the dispersing of the faculties thereof by the sinews.

Description.  
Signes.

This Disease always invades those that are asleep, and most of all such as lie upon their backs; they suppose a great weight lies upon them, and stops their breath, that they cannot move; and dream that they are almost strangled, and would cry out, but their voice is stopped; and indeed they groan pittifully, at last being something wakened, and able to stir, the passage is opened and they eased.

Caution.

This Disease (though seeming light) is not to be neglected, by reason of its affinity with the Apoplexy and Falling-sickness.

Let him never lie on his back.

Let

Let his Diet be such as breedeth not wind, nor Diet. is of a dilative quality.

If there be signs of fulness, use bleeding.

Let him not go to bed till digestion be perfect. Vinegar of Squils taken two spoonfuls in the morning fasting; and if digestion be weak, one spoonful presently after meat digesteth the humours, and cures the disease.

Keep the head and neck always warm. Also you may take inwardly such things as strengthen the Brain, such be, *Aromaticum Rosatum*, *Diamoscum dulce*, *Diambra*, *Dianthon*, &c.

disease, since the writing hereof, & in a far different manner from what here is writen; but the margent is too small to hold the story.

Blood-letting. Cure.

I have been my self, and have known others strangely troubled with this

## CHAP. XXVI.

### Of Madness.

**M**ania in Greek, is a Disease which the Latins Differ- call *Insania* and *Furor*; in English Madnessence be- and Fury, they that have this Disease be unruly, twixt like wild Beasts. *Mania* and *Phrenitis*.

The difference betwixt this and the Frenzy, is this; a Feaver alwayes accompanies a Frenzy, but never this Disease called *mania*, or Madness.

It is caused of much blood flowing up into the Cause. Brain; sometimes this blood offends in quantity only, and sometimes in quality, when it is melancholy, The superfluity of melancholy, causeth alienation of mind, and causeth the Man to be foolish, and beside himself.

I shall only in this Chapter treat of Madness Signes. coming of blood.

There

There goeth before Madnesse, weaknesse of the head, tickling of the ears, shinings before the eyes, great watchings, strange thoughts approach the mind, heaviness of the head, a ravenous appetite, a forwardnesse to bodily lust, the eyes stare, and seldom either wink or beckon.

If it come of blood only, they laugh continually, and the sick thinketh he seeth before his eyes things to laugh at.

If any Choler be mingled with the blood, then the pricking & swift moving of the brain, makes them angry, ireful, moving and bold.

**Bleeding** In the first place bleed them, *and then by the colour of the blood you may discern easily the quality predominate.*

If it be a Woman, *breath a Vein in the Ankles, for that provokes the Termes.*

Let their Diet be such as breeds little blood, till they are almost starved.

In many the humour is waxed gross, and settled by long continuance, and such are worst to cure, though perhaps they be patientest, for the time, yet look for them to be furious enough, when the humour is stirred, and made thinner.

If it come of blood only, you may draw away blood abundantly, from the arm, under the tongue, from the forehead, from the fundament with Leaches.

If Choler be mixed with the blood, I refer you to the Chapter of Frenzy.

If of Melancholy, the next Chapter shall instruct you, only let him eat little, drink no strong drink nor wine; sleep much, and go to stool orderly.



CHAP. XXV.

*Of Melancholy.*

**B**Y Melancholy, here I mean, not the simple complexion; for without that none can live; but the alteration of the complexion in quantity, quality, or seat.

It cometh without a Feaver, and is engendred of Melancholy, occupying the mind, and changing the temperature of the brain.

It is caused three wayes. Sometimes it is caused of the common vice of melancholy blood; being in all the veins of the body, and so hurteth the brain.

Sometimes the blood only in the brain is altered, the blood in other parts of the body being safe.

And sometimes it is engendred through inflammation about the Spleen, and so sending up melancholy vapours thither.

The most common signs be fearfulness, sadness, hatred, strange imaginations; for some think themselves brute beasts, and counterfeit their noise and voice; my self knew one, this present year 1645. that thought himself only a man, and all other men beasts that came to devour him, and stood with a staffe to beat every one that came near him; whom I perswaded that he was made of a black pot, and if he did not speedily get him into his house, I would throw a stone at him, and break him; which was so upon his imagination, that he threw away his staffe, and ran in, and would suffer none to touch him for fear they should break him.

Descrip-  
tion.

Caused  
three  
wayes.

2.  
Had this  
been to  
do again,  
I could  
have

done it  
ten times  
better.

Signes.

3.

Inun-

Innumerable such Fancies are mentioned by Authors which I forbear to mention.

**This is according to the cause; if the cause be fear, and the ways and means by which they were cured, you may read in A.P. his Chirurgery: but to proceed.** Many desire death, and some do kill themselves, others are afraid of death, and think if of grief their best friends when they see them determine they seek to kill themselves; themselves inspired with the Holy Ghost, and prophesie of things to come.

**Also the state of their body is slender, black, rough, dry and hard in touching, and altogether melancholious.**

**This is caused through excessiveness of some passion, as love, joy, grief, &c. or through much study, watching, stopping of the Hemoroides, or of love, Menstrua, or the eating of wicked and melancholick meats.**

**But in such in whom it is caused by the Spleen, they have rawness, much wind, sharp belchings, burnings, and grievousness of the sides, the sides are drawn upwards, and many times they have Inflammations there. Also Costiveness, little sleep, troublesome and naughty dreams, swimming in the head, and sound in the ears.**

**Diet.  
Air:**

**Let him abhor melancholy Diet.**

**Let the Air he abides in be hot and moist.**

**Let his Meat be hot and moist, of good digestion, and breeding good blood. Young Borrage boil'd and buttered, is good meat for him.**

**Purge.**

**Black Hellebore corrected with Cinnamon, is a good**

good purge for him, so is decoction of *Epithimum*.

Fumitory is a soveraign Herb for the disease, and so is Betony.

If the infirmity lie in the whole body, you have **Bleeding**, no other remedy but you must bleed him often, because all the blood is corrupted.

If it lie in the head only, bleeding is needless, only follow his humours, and comfort him with Cordials and Cephaliques, that strengthen the brain; such be of *Simples*, Betony, Red-Roses, Harts-tongue, Endive, Borrage, Bugloss and Violet-flowers, of *Compounds*, *Aromaticum Rosatum*, *Diamoscum dulce*, *Anacardina Letificans*, *Galleni Dianthon*, *species Cordialis temperate*, &c. And his best Doctor is Dr. Merry-man.

But if it proceed from the Spleen; for *Simples* use Centaury, Peniroyal, Wormwood, and Germander, and Bay-berries, apply to the region of the Spleen an Emplaster of Melilot for the Spleen.

Also you may provoke them to Sneeze with **Sneezing** Betony in powder snuffed up in their nose.

There are divers other manners of cure which I omit here, my scope being in this place to treat of it, as it annoyeth the brain only; I may happen to write of the rebundance of all the Complexions severally and distinctly by themselves; to which I refer you.

---

## CHAP. XXVI.

*Of Trembling or Shaking of any Limb, called commonly the Shaking Palsy.*

**T**His disease commonly goeth a little before death, especially in acute diseases and sur-fets,



## Culpeper's last Legacies,

sets, and then it is an evident sign death is near.

It many times troubles aged people, and then it is incurable.

**Cause.**

It is also caused by fear; then remove the fear, and the trembling is gone.

Sometimes it comes by accident, as immoderate cold taken, abundance of gross, thick, and clammy humours, much drinking of Wine, &c.

There needs no signs to be shewed.

**Diet.**

For diet, use such things as cut, divide and extenuate; let him eschew all things that hurt the sinews; all Wines.

**Cure.**

The best cure that I know, (which indeed is sufficient) I have known men of ninety years of age, kept from this infirmity, only at night when they go to bed, by rubbing their fingers between their toes, and smelling to them.

**Question.**  
Is such  
things as  
strength-  
en the  
Nerves  
are excel-  
lent; I am  
sorry I  
was so  
brief.

Yet if you be troubled with it already, your best way is first (when you have learned what humour it is that troubles you) to purge out that humour.

In this Treatise are many Aphorismes, which are marked with a Note or Hand in the Margent, which the studious in Physick, especially young Students, if they please to write them out by themselves, may find wonderful useful.

*Plures gula periere quam gladio.*

*FEBRILIA:*  
OR,  
A TREATISE  
OF  
FEAVERS  
IN GENERAL.

---

By NICHOLAS CULPEPER,  
Student in Astrology and Physick.

---



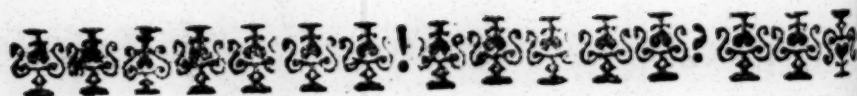
---

L O N D O N:  
Printed in the Year 1671.



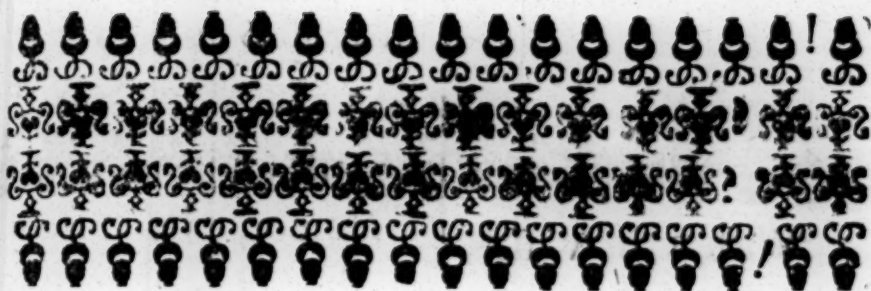
**I** *Revised this Treatise of*  
*FEAVERS; the Me-*  
*thod of which was Galen's. This*  
*I am confident, it containeth most*  
*excellent Truths.*

Nich. Culpeper.



CHAP.





## CHAP. I.

*A Table of FEAVERS.*

A Feaver is an unnatural heat,  
engendred,

{ In the Spirits.  
 { In the Humors.  
 { In the fleshy parts

In the Spirits it causeth

{ *Ephemeris*, or an one-  
 day-Feaver.  
 { *Synochus non putrida*;  
 or Feaver lasting  
 three or four days.

In the Humors it causeth a  
rotten Feaver, and the  
Humours rot

{ Within the Vessels:  
 { Without the Vessels

		{ All the Humors rot, and so cause <i>Synochus putrida</i> .
		{ Of Choler, a continual Tertian.
Within the Vessels	{ Only one Humor, and so by Pu- trefacti- on.	{ Of Flegm, a continual Quotidian. Of Melan- choly, a continual Quartane.
		{ Of Choler, an intermitting Tertian Ague.
Without the Vessels, by putrefaction.	{ Of Flegm, that is	{ Sweet, an in- termitting- Quotidian- Ague. Glazen, it cau- seth <i>Epialos</i> .
		{ Of Melancholy, an inter- mitting Quartane Ague.
		{ Hectick Feavers.
In the fleshy parts it causeth		{ <i>Merasmos</i> .

## CHAP. II.

*A Comment upon the Table of Feavers.*

**A** Feaver is an unnatural heat, which taketh <sup>Definition.</sup> its beginning at the heart, and is spread from thence through the whole body by the arteries and veins; hurting or letting thereby the operation of the parts thereof.

The Body of Man is generally divided by *Hippocrates* into three parts; The things contained, the things containing, and the thing that gives life and motion to both.

1. The things contained are humours;
2. The things containing the humours is the flesh;
3. The spirits give life and motion to both:

In all these three, distinctly and severally happen Feavers.

For if this unnatural heat (for a man may be naturally hot, and is hotter at one time, then at another, yet hath no feaver;) be kindled in the Spirits, it causeth either a feaver which the *Greeks* call *ἡμερίς*, in Latin *Diaria*, in English an One-<sup>ἡμερίς</sup> day feaver; because in this feaver, there chanceth but one fit; and that lasteth not above a day: for as a bottle filled with hot water heats the bottle, so the spirits being inflamed, heat the body; or,

Sometimes it causeth a feaver, called *Σωόχος*, <sup>Three sorts of</sup> *non putrida*; and it commonly lasteth (if it be rightfully handled) not above three days, the *Σωόχος*. *Latins* call it *Diaria*, but very improperly; Of this *Σωόχος* there are three sorts.

Some continue with equal vehemence, from the



ὁμοῖος. beginning to the latter end; ὁμοῖος and ἀκμαστικός, the *Greeks* call this.

2. Some always increase by little and little, until ἀναβάτι- they end; and such the *Greeks* call ἀναβάτικος  
κος. and ἵτακμάστικος.

3. Again, some decrease and diminish by little and little, and those the *Greeks* call παρεκμ-  
μῶσικος. ἰστικός.

Moreover, if only one humour do putrifie and rot within the Vessels, it causeth a feaver the *Greeks* call συνόχους, which is a continual feaver; for although there be remission in this feaver between the shaking fits, yet the feaver never leaves him, before he be either cured of it, or killed by it.

Differ- So that here in this lies the difference between  
ence be- *Synochos*, and *Synochys*; the former hath no re-  
tween mission in the fit, but only one continued fit; the  
συνόχους and latter hath always remission, or slacking, though  
συνόχους. no intermission as is in Agues; in *Συνόχους* but one  
Three fit, in *συνόχους* many.

Of this *συνόχους* are also three sorts; for if the putrefaction be of choler only, it causeth a continual Tertian, called by the *Greeks* χαῦσος.

1. χαῦσος. If flegm putrifie within the Vessels, it causeth  
2. a continual Quotidian.

3. But if Melancholy, a continual Quàrtan.

Differ- Yet all these differ from intermitting Feavers,  
ence be- called (by the Vulgar) Agues; far and wide,  
tween re- though the fits are distant alike.

& inter- For first, though the humours that cause them  
mitting both, be the very same; yet in these in remitting  
feavers, the humour is contained within the  
1. Veins; but in intermitting feavers, commonly  
called Agues, it is dispersed through the mem-  
bers, and so through their violence of spreading,  
the feaver intermits for a time.

Secondly

Secondly, this continual, though remitting feaver, still remains between the fits, though not with the same violence; but an intermitting feaver or ague, totally to the Patients apprehension, ceaseth, till the next fit come.

Of which now, a word or two.

This feaver is very fitly called in Latin, *Febris Febris interpolata*, because the fits renew at their time; *terpolata*; it is called by some, *Febris deficiens*. Three sorts.

Of this also are three sorts.

1. Tertian,
2. Quotidian.
3. Quartan.

A pure intermitting Tertian is caused of 1. Tertian.  
choler rotting without the Vessels.

An exquillite Quotidian is called in Greek *ἀμφοτέρωθεν*, and is caused of sweet flegm putrifying Quotidian. 2.  
or rotting without the Vessels; for if the flegm an.  
that putrifies be glazen, it causeth a feaver called *ἀμφοτέρωθεν*. 3.  
*Epialos*. Epialos

*Epialos* is a feaver, wherein the Patient feels Epialos  
both heat and cold, immoderately in all parts, quid.  
both at one time and at one place.

To this feaver, belongs an accident, called by the Greeks *Ἀππνησία*, that is, when vehement heat *Ἀππνησία*  
is felt in the bowels and entrails; and immoderate cold in the external parts.

An intermitting Quartan is caused of melancholy rotting without the Vessels, is governed 3. Quartan.  
by *Saturn*, a planet slow, weighty and ponderous, and therefore the disease is commonly Chronical and lasting.

I come now to the last sort of fevers, which the *Febris Hæ-*  
Table shews to proceed of heat in the fleshy parts; *Ætica*.  
and that is called *Hætica febris*, an Hæctick feaver.

For as a hot vessel heats the water that is put into it, so a Hectick feaver, though the rise of it be in the flesh, after the third concoction, yet it heats the humours which the flesh contains.

Meras-  
mos.  
Galen's  
errorr.

This feaver for the most part, without speedy cure, consumes the whole body, and then is called *Merasmos*; and this *Merasmos*, saith *Galen*, is incurable; but the good old Soul was mistaken; for I have known it cured in more then one or two. I have had it my self since the writing of this.

As for the Pestilence, it is also a Feaver, and a shrewd one too; I have written of that already, in a Treatise by it self; and therefore no more of it now.

Inflam-  
mations.

There are other feavers that come by reason of the inflammation of some member.

Pleuretia

So that the feaver which comes in the film that girdeth the ribs, is called *Pleuretia*.

Περίπ-  
νευμονία.

*Peripneumonia.*

Τυφώ-  
δης.

If of the stomack, it is called *Typhodes*.

Erraticæ  
febres.

Some feavers also are called *Erraticæ*, that keep no certain time of coming at all; nor any order of fits, and intermission; and such Feavers come commonly of *Melancholy*.

Com-  
pound  
feavers.

But in every Fever, you must consider diligently, whether the feaver come by any disease of any particular member; else you will err egregiously in giving Physick.

These are all simple feavers, some feavers are compound, as divers feavers of a like nature joyn together; as intermitting feavers with intermitting, &c. For example, two intermitting *Tertians*, or two intermitting *Quartanes* joyn together: in which last the party is sick two days, and well but one; my own child, at the writing hereof,



hereof, had two intermitting Tertians, the one far more violent than the other, and they came at some twelve hours distance.

But sometimes, an intermitting Tertian is joyned with a continual Quotidian; and this disease is called in Greek *ἡμεμετός*, and this only is known as yet of compound feavers, of different natures; the other are still of feavers of like nature, as continual feavers with continual, or intermitting with intermitting.

And thus much of my Paraphrase, which though it be somewhat long, yet I account nothing tedious that is Rational; I know many words might have been added, but not one might have been left out. For by ignorance in, or negligence of this, many lives are lost; which by due observance of this, might be preserved.

### CHAP. III.

*Of Εφημέρα, or an one-day Feaver.*

**E**φημέρα in Greek; in Latin *Diaria*, in English, an one-day Feaver, because it hath but one fit, which continueth but one day, if rightly handled; if not, it turneth to other diseases.

It is caused when the breath is inflamed above nature, without any putrefaction, and this chan- ceth many ways.

First, through binding or thickning of the skin, which stoppeth the vapours that were wont to flow out by the pores, which being hot and sharp ingender a Feaver.

Secondly, by weariness.

Third-

3. Thirdly, by watchings, crudities, and lack of digestion.
4. Fourthly, by sadness, care and sorrow.
5. Fifthly, by anger and vehement passion of the mind.
6. Sixthly, by fear.
7. Seventhly, by vehement heat of the Sun.
8. Eighthly, by hunger and drunkenness.
9. Ninthly, by swellings and kernels about the throat; for all these heat the spirits and inflame them.

The Signs are of two sorts.

First general signs; whereby this Feaver is known from any other Feaver.

Secondly, particular signs, which shew from which of all these several causes the Fevers comes.

Signes  
General,  
Six.

The general Signs are six.

1. They change the pulse, in greatness and swiftness, but it keeps that proportion, in order, softness, and equality, it did according to nature.
2. The Urine seldom or never turns from a natural state.

*A natural Urine is subruse in colour, mean in substance, and if you shake it, it sparkles like Sack.*

Yet I deny not but Urines alter something according to the predominant complexion of the party, even in men of perfect health.

3. Their heat of body is gentle, pleasant and easie.
4. They end commonly by moist sweet sweats.
5. Vehement pain in the head and stomach, and other parts.
6. Abhorring of Meat, and insatiable Thirst.

The

The particular Signes.

Signes.  
Of watch-  
ing.

If it come of watching, there follows a naught-  
ty colour, swelling of the face, heaviness of the  
eyes, that he can hardly lift them up, the hairs of  
the eye-lids are moist, and the pulse small; for  
*watching hinders digestion, and causeth crudities,*  
when these Signes arise.

If it come of care or sorrow, the body is lean; if Care and  
sorrow be the cause, the colour is clearer; if care,  
darker, hollowness, and driness of the eyes, dis-  
coloured skin.

If of anger, the eyes seem to stick out farther Anger.  
than they use to do, the face is red, and the pulse  
lofty.

If of sadness, the pulse is small, feeble and Sadness.  
rare.

If of fear, the face is pale, *for fear sends the blood* Fear.  
*from the circumference to the center* the pulse is swift,  
unequal, and sharp.

If it come through burning and heat of the Sun.  
Sun, their skin is hot and dry, and their head  
seemeth to burn, the eyes are red and troubled,  
and the veins in the temples, forehead, and under  
their eyes, are stretched and puffed up.

If of cold, there followeth heavy distillations Cold.  
and rheums, astringency; for cold bindeth and  
keepeth the vapours within the skin.

If of weariness, the skin is exceeding dry, and Wear-  
the pulse exceeding small. ness.

If of drunkenness or hunger, the sick may tell Drunk-  
you. enness.

If of Kernels, or impostumation of the throat, Kernel;  
the pulse is great, swift and often, their face swol-  
len, their Urine pale.

For cure, you must observe the general rule Cure.  
*contraria contrariis medentur.* Let



Diet.

Let their general Diet be meats of good juice, and easie of digestion.

Give such as have their disease of anger or sun-burning, cool and moist Diet.

If of cold, a diet that doth moderately heat; against watching and sadness, a diet that moistneth and provoketh sleep.

If of weariness; let them eat as much meat as they can well digest.

Moreover you must regard the Patient's strength, his natural temper, the time of the year, age, and usual custom of the sick, and accordingly order your Physick.

Cautions.

If the natural temper of the body be Colerick, you must feed them with meat at the beginning of the fit; for it is very subject, if the body be kept fasting, to turn to an acute rotten Feaver.

Stool.

See the body be kept laxative; if he go not naturally to stool, provoke him with an emollient Clister.

Bath.

Finally, so soon as the fit begins to wane; bath him in a warm bath, made with sweet herbs boiled in water; for that will open the pores, and let out the vapours.

## CHAP. IV.

συνόχης  
quid.

*Of Synochus non putrida, being a Feaver  
which lasteth three or four days.*

Cause.

**T**His Feaver is caused, either because the small pores of the skin are stopped, or because the body it self is moderately thickned through cold, or after bathing, or by sharp binding medicines, heat

heat of the Sun, or any other thing that dries the skin.

It may be thus known.

Signes.

First, by touching, for the skin is harder and more compact, than it was wont to be.

1.

Secondly, by the heat, which at first seems gentle and easie, but after you have held your hand a while, you shall feel it sharper.

2.

Thirdly, the Urine is not much altered from its natural substance and colour, for this disease lies in the spirits, not in the blood.

3.

Fourthly, the body falls not away, but their eyes are swollen, and fuller of moisture than usually.

4.

Fifthly, the pulse is equal, swift, vehement and frequent.

5.

For cure of this disease, you may safely draw out so much blood as age, strength, and the season of the year permits.

Cure.  
Bleeding.  
Abster-  
gents.

After Bleeding use *things that cleanse & scowre*; such are *Oximel*, *Hyssop*, *Origanum*, *Smallage*; and observe whether the heat abate by this Diet.



For if by the third day you find little heat left, you may safely bath him with such thiugs as are scouring, such be *Orris* & *Aristolochia* roots, *Smallage*, *Salt-peeter*, boiled in water and honey.

Bath.

But if the Feaver then increase, or on the fourth day, then either you were mistaken at first in the disease, or else the Feaver is altered, and some humour putrified.

## CHAP. V.

*Of a rotten Feaver, called Synochus putrida.*

**S***ynochus putrida*, is a Feaver which holds from the begining to the ending, without any great  
*Synochus putrida muta. quid.*

mutation, or sensible change, and may well be called a constant or stable fever.

Of this are three sorts; I described them in the second Chapter.

**Cause.**

This fever is caused by the rotting of all the humours equally within the Vessels, and especially in the great Vessels about the arm-holes and share; and this chanceth, when fervent heat is kept in by violent binding and stopping, which is within the body; for when heat and moist things cannot breath out, they putrifie & rot presently.

Therefore this fever is seldom ingendred in thin spare folk, nor in cold bodies, nor old age, but in such as abound in blood, of gross, fat, or fleshy bodies, or stuffed with hot excrements.

**Signes.**

This is properly known from *Synochus non putrida*, because there are signs of rottenness in the Urine, and the pulse of a man sick of this, but not so in the former.

The other signs all agree with the former.

**Cure.**

The Cure of this fever must begin with **Bleeding.** blood-letting, and that in the beginning of the disease, if you can.

**Cautions.**

Cold drink is the most perilous in this disease; first because it causeth obstructions, and hindreth the attenuation of the clammy humours.

Secondly, cold drinks hurt weak members; some by drinking cold drink in this fever, have gotten such sore throats, that they could not swallow; in some the stomach is hurt, that they could not digest; in some the Bladder; generally that part that is weakest, is most subject to hurt; and being hurt, cannot perform its proper office.

But blood-letting you may use at any time, if strength permit, provided it be not upon a full stomach.

Such



Such as have this feaver, have always looseness, Drink. and sometimes vomit up Choler.

Let his drink be Barly Water, sweetned with Syrrup of Violets, and a little Oyl of Vitriol to make it tart.

Let his Diet be light of digestion, and let him eat it at his usual times of eating; for then it will digest best. Meat.

Also Oranges, Lemmons, Oxymel, and Verjuice, are Medicinal for him.

---

CHAP. VI.

*Of continual Feavers, called by the Greeks*  
*Συνόχους.*

**Σ**υνόχους in Greek, is a continual feaver, that hath some certain slacking between the fits; yet no absolute intermission till the end of it, and by this only it is known from Agues, or intermitting feavers, therefore I shall omit the signs till then. Συνόχους.

This feaver is caused by rotting of one particular humor only within the Vessels; I shewed it in the first and second Chapters: I remit you to that. Cause.

I shall only treat of that which is called of the Greeks καύσος by it self, in the next Chapter, for that is the most dangerous, and wind up the rest together in this. A compendium of the cure of Feavers.

In the general cure of Feavers of this sort, these things must be considered.

First, the Feaver.

Secondly, the Rottenness.

In the feaver two things must also be considered. In the Feaver.

First,

1. First, How that part which is already kindled and inflamed, may be remedied.

2. Secondly, How that which is not kindled, may be letted and hindred from inflammation.

In the rottenness.

Also two things must be considered touching the rottenness or putrefaction.

1. First, How the humours already putrified may be healed.

2. Secondly, How those that are not putrified may be kept from putrefaction.

*Hec qui non animadvertit, errabit nimis.*

Bleeding] In the beginning of the feaver, if strength and age permit, let blood ; for that lets out the inflamed blood, and cools the rest.

Obstructions.

The body thus cooled, you must cure the obstructions, and that without heating the Patient, lest you increase the feaver, and cause more putrefaction.

Clifters.

This is best done by Clifters and Sweats ; for Clifters, take only the common decoction with Molossus, and *Diacatholicon*.

Sweats.

For sweats, you may use either Venice-treacle, *Matthiolus* his great Antidote, Serpentry roots, *Eleſtuarium de ovo* : *Consideratis considerandis*.

To stop and hinder the humours not inflamed from inflaming, use cooling Juleps, made with Barly-water, Harts-horn, Ivory, *Scoraonera* roots, *Zedoary*, &c. Syrrup of Violets, &c.

To prevent putrefaction, avoid all meats, I mean flesh, and all broths of flesh.

To bring away humours already putrified, boil a white Lilly root in White-wine, and let him drink it.

For outward Medicines, Vine branches, Water Lillies, Endive Succory, Wood-sorrel, Sorrel, Lettuce,

tuce, Knot-grafs, Vinegar, thefe or any of thefe beaten, and the juice mingled with oyl of Rofes, and Wool dipped in it, and applied to the Stomack, mightily allay the heat.

But have a care by all means, that you do not apply this at the beginning of the Feaver, for then the heat lies inward, and this will add more violence to it; but only when the heat is come to the external parts, for then it cherifheth the Lungs, and provoketh sleep.

Provoke sleep with *Diafcordium*; if that pre-Sleep. fail not, ufe *Laudanum*.

But have a care of Opiats, at the beginning of the Disease.

For Cordials, *Scorzonera*-roots, Bezoar, Syrup Cordials. of Citron-pills, and Syrup of Balm of *Fernelius* Confection of *Alchermes*, and de *Hyacintho*, *Electuarium de Ovo*, any of thefe may be adminiftred, *confideratis confiderandis*.

## CHAP. VII.

### *Of a Burning Feaver, called Kaŭſos.*

**K** Aŭſos in Greek, is called in English a Burning Feavor, or continual Tertian. *Kaŭſos, quid.*

It is cauſed of Choler rotting or putrifying Cause. within the Veins, together with the Blood.

Thoſe that have this Diſeaſe, their Tongue is Signes. dry, rough and black, with knawing of the Stomack, immoderate thirſt, and watching; their Dung is liquid and pale.

Let the place wherein the Sick lies be cool, the Cure. air ſweet, and if it be not cool, make it ſo by art; Air. of which you have examples in my *Critica Cephalica*, vol. 3. lib. 2.



Drink.

Let him drink for his ordinary Drink, water

Note.

wherein Barley, Cinamon, and *such Herbs as cool and moisten*, such be, Lettuce, Sorrel, Wood-sorrel, Purslane, &c. have been boiled.

Also Syrup of Violets, Violet and Strawberry-leaves, Water-lillies and Verjuice, juice of Lemons and Oranges, are medicinal.

With the other Medicines mentioned in the former Chapter; and Bleeding.

Blisters.



If these Medicines prevail not, but the *Humors flow up, and lie heavy on the head, which you may know by their talking idly*, you must apply Blisters to the inside of the Wrists, and the inside of the Calves of their Legs.

Pidgeons.

If that prevail not, but you perceive their case desperate, apply Pidgeons to the soles of their Feet.

But if in a desperate case it oppresses their Stomack or Heart, I have known six grains of *Mercurius Vire* cure them; yet in my opinion, *Lac Sulphurea* had been better.

## CHAP. VIII.

*Of an Intermitting Tertian Feaver, commonly called a second days Ague.*



OF all Agues, this is only mortal; yet the other two may turn to another disease that may kill, but themselves kill not.

Note.

And this Ague, though sometime it be mortal, yet is of all other most frequent, and if rightly banded, easiest cured.

*It vexeth young folks most.*

I suppose the reason why this Ague is most frequent, Cause.  
to be because Choler by reason of its heats, is most apt  
to stir with violence.

This disease is caused of Choler, pure, sincere  
and unmixed, carried with violence by the sensi-  
tive parts of the Body.

This disease happeneth usually to persons cholerick  
by nature, in their flourishing age, and in spring time.

The signs of this Disease are, a vehement Cold, Signes.  
rigor and stiffness in the beginning of the Fit; the  
Patient thinketh his body is pricked; soreness of  
the Bones, as though they were nipped, an exact  
order and equality of the Pulse; for as the Feaver  
increaseth, the Pulses are raised in strength, vehe-  
mency and frequency.

In the vehemency of the Feaver, it causeth  
thirst, and burneth up the Patient; his Breath is  
swift, and hot as fire, and requireth drink im-  
moderately, their Urine cholerick, subrupe, and  
something yellow.

The longest fit of a Tertian endureth but twelve  
hours.

When these fits come sooner and sooner, the Disease  
getteth strength over nature; but if later and later,  
the Disease loseth strength.

Galen saith, men labouring of this Disease, vo- Galen's  
mit Choler. mistakes.

At the writing hereof, and it is the seventh of  
February 1646, I have cured above twenty of this  
Disease, and it is like seen more, yet never knew  
nor saw any vomit at all.

When I was a Boy, I had the Disease constant- I have  
ly every Spring (though Galen saith it comes only known e-  
in the heat of Summer: Gal. ad Glauconem.) yet ne- nough  
ver (to my memory) had so much as a proneness vomit  
to vomit. since.

Cure.

The usual Cure of this Disease, is by Vomiting and Sweating. But I have found out a more certain and speedy, and indeed never missing Cure.

Air.

Let the Air the sick abides in, be clear and penetrating.

Both of this and Quotidian Agues I never missed cure, by giving only Cinquefoil, gathered in the hour of *Jupiter*, if it be possible, he being above the Earth: and truly I should think it were the better, if the *Moon* were aspected to him, but I never observed it.

This I have given in Powder, both in common Vinegar, and Vinegar of Squils; I have observed the number of the Leaves I have given, viz. one for a Quotidian, three for a Tertian, &c. & I have observed it, I have given the Decoction thereof, and all of them still did the Cure in three Fits, sometimes in two; therefore I hold it the most sovereign Medicine for Agues in the world.

## CHAP. IX.

*Of a Quartane Fever, or Ague.*

**T**His proceedeth of Melancholy putrifying and rotting without the Veins.

Cause.

This Fever doth not invade the Sick with that rigour and stiffness that the former doth, but the cold is like the cold a man feels in an hard frost, as though it would break his Bones, & doth not seem to prick him as the other doth.

Signes.

Their Urine is white and thin, and, as it were, strained from some gross matter.

It cometh commonly about harvest, and stayeth (without cure) till next Spring; and is a stubborn Humour to be dealt withal.

For



## his Physical, Chyrurgical Remains.

69

For many a time and often, this Ague by violent Medicines (as Vomits, &c.) is turned to a double Quartane, and so the Patient hath two sick days, and but one well day.

Saturn, the causer of this Ague, is a sullen Planet, and the Disease takes after him; therefore deal gently with it at first; you had better please a sullen, potent adversary, than displease him.

I never had any Patient of this Disease, since I knew the vertues of the herb Cinquefoil; it is very probable it wil cure this, as well as other Agues\*. \* Since I have done the Cure

Yet if Blood abound, you may let blood in this Ague; and if it look black, draw out good store. Bleeding. I desire these Hel-  
Also black Hellebore, corrected with Cinamon, may be given. lebo res

And white Hellebore, if it may be given inwardly at all, it may in this Disease. may be let alone

But let these be given on the well days, for then they anger the Ague less. in this Disease, for old

In this Ague, you must have a great care of the Spleen, for that is the receptacle of Melancholy. Saturn will not be vexed.

Therefore you may anoint the left side with Oyl of Capers, *Unguentum succis apertivis*, or any opening splenetick Medicine.

## CHAP. X.

### Of a Quotidian Feaver or Ague.

**I**T is caused of sweet Flegm, putrified without Cause. the Vcins; it is called of the Greeks *αμφιμειν*, but if the Flegm that putrifies be glazen, (which *αμφιμειν* is the coldest of all flegms) it engenders a Feaver *πικρα* called *Epialos*.

*ἑπιάλθω*. In this Feaver, called *ἑπιάλθω* by the Greeks, the Patient feeleth vehement heat, and vehement cold, both at one time, in all parts of his Body.

*Signes.* In the beginning of a Quotidian, the Pulse is unequal, slow, little & weak, nothing like neither Tertian nor Quartan, neither for extremity of heat nor cold; neither do they thirst much, because the Vapour is moist and smoky.

*It most vexeth flegmatick persons.*

But this also is compleatly, perfectly & speedily cured, by that excellent Herb *Cinquefoil*, so used as before was specified.

As for all mixed kind of Agues, I need not write; but I commend this as a Sovereign Cure for them all.

And (God willing) I intend to make proof of in Continual, Quotidians, Tertians & Quartans.

## CHAP. XI.

### *Of a Heſtick Feaver.*

*Heſtica  
Febris,  
quid.*

**A**N Heſtick Feaver is a Disease, wherein an unnatural heat is kindled, throughout the fleshy and massie parts of the Body.

They that have this Feaver, feel no pain, neither do they know (the rules of Art excepted) that they have any feaver at all; because all the parts of the body are equally hot, and so there is no reluctancy.

*Causes.*

This Disease is caused two ways.

1.

First, through want of Physick, or a skilful Physician in other feavers, which having consumed the Humour, seize upon the flesh.

2.

Secondly, they sometimes begin of themselves, as of sorrow, anger, weariness, burning of the Sun, &c.

When

When these Feavers consume and wast the body, (as indeed without speedy cure they always do) then *Galen* calls them  $\mu\acute{\alpha}\rho\alpha\sigma\mu\omicron$ ; and this *Marasmus*, saith he, is incurable; and to make this seem as though it were true, he tells a long tale of the snuffe of a candle; which, saith he, being put out mutters to pieces; but if you put oil to it, it makes it burn with more violence, so (quoth he) this feaver, if you go about to extinguish the heat, the party dies instantly; but if you add moisture to him, his feaver burns more violently.

*Gal. de in-  
equali in-  
temperie.*

But Experience (the best Artist) makes no difference between Hectick feavers, and *Marasmus*, but shews plainly that all Hectick feavers are wasting, and also curable: therefore I shall leave Doctor *Galen*, and follow Doctor Experience in this Disease; and therefore now to the purpose.

The Signes of this Disease are these:

Signes:

Their Eyes are wonderful hollow, as though they were sunk in their heads, their moisture is consumed, so that you may see the bones of their Eye-brows stick out; there hangeth at the hair of their Eye-brows gums or filth, as though they had gone a long journey in the dust; their skin is hard and dry, their eyes wink often, as though they were sleepey, when indeed it is far otherwise with such as have this Disease, for they can hardly be brought to rest; they pine to skin and bone, and if you look upon their Belly, it looks as if it had no bowels in it; the Pulse is weak and often, and continually after meat the fever is increased, and the Pulses are augmented in greatness.

The Cure consists in cooling and moistning, Cure. which must be done both outwardly and inwardly.



**Air.** Let the Air the Sick abideth in, be cold and moist; if it be not so naturally, make it so by Art, whereof you have examples in my Treatise, called *Crit. Cephal.*

**Meats.** Let his Meats be such as moisten, and breed good and active Blood; such are Lamb-stones, Cock-stones, Lobsters, Prawns, Eggs boiled soft, Partridges, Larks, &c.

**Herbs.** For Herbs, let him use Lettuce, Endive, Succory, Spinage, Mallows, &c.

**Drink.** Let his Drink with his Meat, be only water wherein Cinamon hath been boiled.

**Milk.** Let him drink new Milk abundantly, provided he have no feaver of putrifaction, or rottenness joined with it.

He may eat freely Raisons of the Sun, and Almonds, Cherries, Prunes, Pomegranats & Figs.

**Fruits.** Let him eat often, and but a little at a time.

**Cordials.** For Cordials, he may use *Diarrhodon abbatis*, *Diatragacanthum frigidum*, *Diapapaver* and *species Cordiales temperate*, *Diamargariton frigidum*.

**Syrups.** For Syrups, let him use Syrup of Violets, Endive, Lettuce, Water-Lillies, and Vinegar.

**Emulsions.** Let him drink Emulsions made of Barley-water, Almonds, the four greater cold Seeds, and white Poppy-seeds, sweetned with Sugar.

**Uction.** Lastly, let his body be kept continually anointed with pure Oyl-olive, and nothing else.

**Cautions.** Many in this Disease vomit up all their meat so soon as they have eaten it, (which indeed I forgot before) in such cases make their Emulsion of Mint-water, instead of Barly-water, as before; for only by this Medicine alone, have I known a *Galen's* supposed incurable Disease, cured.

PHYSICAL  
APHORISMS:

Being above 300 rare Medicines, against  
divers Diseases incident to the Body of Man.

*Reader, give me leave to begin, and I will not be  
beholding to time for leave to make a Preamble.*

*1. Observation or Aphorism in Physick.*

**T**He whole ground of Physick is comprehended in these two words, *Sympathy* and *Antipathy*; the one cures by strengthening the part of the Body afflicted; the other by resisting the malady afflicting.

*2. Obs. or Aphor. in Physick.*

Many people are troubled with strange Visions, especially in the night time; strange lights, strange sights appear, and sometimes voices are heard: let such avoid drinking Wine, and as much as may be, strong Beer; for Melancholy is the cause of this, which strong liquor attenuates, and makes it fly upwards.

*3. Against Bleeding.*

The ashes of Hens-feathers or Hens-bones burnt, and applied to the place, is an excellent remedy to stop bleeding in any part of the body.

*4. Another against Bleeding.*

Toads, Spiders, and Frogs, or their Spawn, have the same effects, but they do it by Antipathy, because the blood flies from its enemy; and there-

therefore if a dried Toad be but held in the hand of one that bleedeth, the blood presently ceaseth, and retireth back to the Centre.

5. *Against a Red Face, or Redness of Skin.*

Take two or three Toads, and boil them in Oyl very well, and this Oyl will by Unction quickly cure any Red Face, or any redness of the Skin, out of question by the former reason.

6. *For procuring Chastity.*

Take the Seeds of Red Nettles, beat them into powder, and take a dram of it at a time in White Wine; it procures Chastity, they say, and is a far better medicine to rout *Asmodeus* the lecherous Devil, than the liver of a fish.

7. *Against a Web in the Eye.*

The marrow of a Goose-wing, and the older the Goose is, it is so much the better, a little of it being put into the eye, breaks the web there, though it be never so strong, or of so long continuance.

8. *Another receipt for cure of the Eyes.*

The Milk of a Womans breast is excellent for the foregoing infirmity of the Eyes, only with this Proviso; if the party afflicted be a Male, let it be the milk of a Woman that bare a Male; if a Female; the contrary.

9. *Against an Inflammation or Ague in womens Breasts.*

When People have gotten an Inflammation in any wound, the vulgar say they have gotten the Ague in it, as 'tis familiar when Womens breasts are inflamed, to say they have the Ague in their Breasts; a speedy way, and as cheap as speedy, (that I may not keep such a quarter about the name, as the Colledg of Physicians did about the Rickets)



Rickets) is to take Malt-flower, and make it into the form of a Cataplasm or Pultis with Verjuice, and apply it, be the place in Arm, Leg, or Breast, or elsewhere, either with wound or without.

10. *Another receipt for cure of Inflammation.*

Hollyhock-leaves boiled to a Pultis in Milk, works the same effect in the same causes.

11. *Against a Consumption.*

A most admirable remedy, if not the best of remedies for a Consumption, is to go into the Country in Plowing-time, and follow the Plow, that so the smell of the earth being newly broke up, may be taken in at the nose; if this may not be by reason of the season of the year, or poverty of the Patient, then let it suffice to go out into the field every morning, and dig up a fresh turfe and smell to it an hour or two together.

12. *Against Heart-burning.*

Take five white Pease, and chew them very well, then swallow them down, then hold thy breath as long as thou canst, thou shalt find it an excellent remedy against the Heart-burning.

13. *Against a Rupture.*

For a Rupture do this; give the Patient two or three spoonfuls of the juice of Comfry every morning (I know no reason but that the curious may make it into a Syrup) then apply the bruised herb mixed with its equal quantity of Daisies to the place, and let him keep his bed nine days, by which time he will be well.

14. *Against the Falling-sickness.*

Take a Jay, pull off her feathers, and pull out her guts, then fill her belly full of Cummin-seeds, then dry her in an Oven, till she be converted in-  
to

## Culpeper's last Legacies,

to Mummy, a dram of her being beaten into powder, seeds and all, is an excellent remedy for the Falling-sickness, being taken in any convenient liquor every morning, put in Piony-water.

15. *Against a Quartane Ague.*

Rew bruised and worn under the feet next the skin is an excellent remedy for a Quartane Ague.

16. *Against Deafness.*

If deafness come of stopping in the passages of the ears, as usually it doth, no better remedy in the World than to inject white Wine into the ear (being first a little warmed, for the ears abhor cold) and if you mix a little Spirit of *Castoreum* with it, 'twill be so much the better.

17. *For preserving the Teeth from Rottenness.*

The powder of burnt Harts-horn (let it be well burnt, viz till it be white) and rub your teeth well with it, and it will keep them exceeding white, and safe from rotting.

18. *Against the biting of a mad Dog.*

To eat the Liver of a mad Dog (being first dried and beaten into powder, a dram at a time is sufficient) is an excellent, yea the best of remedies for the biting of a mad dog.

19. *To bring an Ear-wig out of the Ear.*

If an Ear-wig be gotten into a mans ear, you will say it will kill him; but presently, or so soon as you can conveniently get a mellow sweet Apple, and having cut a hole in it, lay the hole so cut to the ear, then lie down on that side, and the Ear-wig will come out to the Apple.

The

20. *Against the Headack.*

The leaves of Egrimony, bruised, and boiled in Honey; and the head that is open-moulded, plaistered with it, helps the disease.

21. *Against the Diseases of the Head.*

The juice of Rue mixed with Vinegar, and the head washed therewith, remedies all superficial evils of the Head, and strengthens it to boot.

22. *A remedy for such as speak  
in their Sleep.*

A draught of the same, drunk going to bed, helpeth such as speak in their Sleeps.

23. *Against Swellings in the Knees.*

Rue stamped with Honey and Salt, helps swellings in the Knees.

24. *A cure for Broken bones  
in the Head.*

For Broken bones in the Head, make an Ointment with Egrimony, Betony, and Hogs-grease, with which anoint the sore, and tent it if need be; also let the patient drink the juice of Betony, and Egrimony, or a very strong decoction of them, a quarter of a pint every morning.

25. *Against the Gout.*

Take an Owl, pull off her feathers, and pull out her guts, salt her well for a week; then put her into a pot and stop it close, and put her into an oven: that so she may be brought into Mummy, which being beat into powder, and mixed with Boars grease, is an excellent remedy for the Gout, anointing the grieved place by the fire.

I fancy this receipt much, it standing to good reason, that a Bird of *Luna* should help a disease of *Saturn*, and therefore desire a dram of the powder may be taken inwardly every morning.



## 26.

Also take notice, that the foregoing way is the best way to convert any thing to Mummy; and so the Jay before mentioned is to be used.

27. *Against the Feaver.*

If a man be feaverish and cannot sweat, (for sweating usually helps such) take Brook-lime and stamp it, and having added a little Vinegar to it, apply it to the soles of his feet, and it will quickly rout the Feaver; and withal provoke sweat.

28. *Against any Ache, or swoln Knees.*

For any Ache or swelling in the Knees, bruise Rue and Lovage; and having boiled them a little in a little honey, apply them warm to the grief.

29. *Against pain in the Feet,  
or Thighs.*

The inner rind of Elder, or Dwarf-elder, which is held to be better, boiled in like manner in Boars-grease, takes away pains in the feet and thighs.

I know no reason, neither indeed do I believe there is any, why the former should not take away pains in Legs as well as in the Knees, both of them being under the Houses of Saturn, viz. Capricorn and Aquary.

30. *Against over-Sweating.*

If any Sweat too much, bruise Lettuce and Linseed together, and apply them to his stomack.

31. *Against the yellow Jaundice.*

Make a strong decoction of Centaury in stale Ale, then having strained it well, boil it with two third parts of Honey, (viz. imagin there be a pound of your Decoction, then take two pound of honey) boil it into a syrup, a spoonful of this taken

taken in the morning helps the yellow Jaundice, strengthens the heart, helps digestion, and provokes Appetite.

32. *Against the French Pox.*

A Pultis made with Linseed and Chick-weed bruised and boiled in water, a little Sheeps suet being added at the latter end, is excellent good for one that hath met with a Woman a little too hot for his turn; I mean, to apply it to his members.

33. *Against Head ach.*

Make Vinegar of Vervain, as you make Vinegar of Roses, only, make it of the leaves, not of the flowers of Vervain, and this helps the Head-ach, the Head being bathed with it; this Receipt I fancy much.

34. *Against Impostume in the Head.*

A most excellent remedy for an Impostume in the Head, is to apply warm to it a red Rose-cake moistned a little either with a Womans Breast-milk, or else with red-Rose-Vinegar.

35. *Another receipt for an Impostume.*

Also a handful of Betony leaves, and half an Ounce of Cummin-seeds boiled in stale Ale, and the decoction drunk, is excellent good for the same, and therefore both together cannot do amiss.

36. *Against pain in the Bones.*

For a pain in the *periostion*, take Alhoof or Ground-Ivy, make a strong decoction of it in Ale, and drink it; a strong decoction of Mouse-ear, made in like manner works the like effect; therefore if you please you may use them both together.

37. *A good Ointment for Bruises and Aches.*

Take a good quantity of black Snails alive, such  
as

as have no shells on their backs, salt them very well, (*viz.* throw salt upon them) then put them into a linen bag, & let them hang till the water be dropped out of them; take of this water a pound, boil it and scum it clean, then add as much May-butter to it, and boil it to an Oyntment, *viz.* till the water be consumed, then add a little Wax to it, and keep it to anoint the grieved place with.

38. *Against shortness of Breath, and stopping of the Lungs.*

Vinegar made of Rue, as you make Vinegar of Roses, is excellent, taken inwardly, for shortness of Breath, and stoppings of the Breast and Lungs.

39. *Against a Tetter, or Ring-worm.*

A good remedy for a Tetter or Ring-worm is, to take the powder of Brimstone, and having mixed it with black Soap, apply it to the sore.

40. *To stanch blood, and take away Inflammation.*

An Ointment made with the leaves of Henbane and Hogs-grease, presently stancheth the Blood, and takes away the Inflammation of any wound whatsoever.

41. *For cure of Festered Sores.*

The juice of the leaves or roots of Fox-gloves, mixed with the like quantity of the partie's Urine, is excellent to wash any Festered Sores with, it will cure to admiration.

You may boil the juice till it be thick, and so you may keep it all the year.

42. *Against the yellow Jaundice.*

The juice of Walwort, or Dwarf-elder which is all one, drunk four ounces each morning, is an excellent, safe, and speedy cure for the yellow Jaundice; if the disease be inveterate, you may make a Bath of the herb boiled in water, to bath the diseased body in.

43. *Against*



43. *Against the Stone.*

Take a Hare, (a *March-Hare* saith my Author, but he leaves no marks to know a *March-Hare* from another Hare) and having taken out her bowels, put all the rest of her hair and all into a pot, and convert her into a Mummy as you were taught before. A dram of this powder (being first beaten, bones and all, and exquisitely mixed) being taken in white-Wine every morning, is an excellent remedy for the Stone.

44. *A remedy for such as are defective in the parts of Generation.*

In an old Cock you may find, when you have opened his gizzard and looked, a white Stone; sometimes more than one, never fewer; this being born about one adds Valour, and makes one strong in the sports of *Venus*; and beloved of all; this is the Magical use of it, I come now to the Physical.

45. *Another remedy for the Stone.*

A very little of it being beaten in an Iron-Morter, for Brass spoils it, and given in white-Wine, breaks the Stone.

46. *The Virtue of a white Stone, found in Cocks and Hens gizzards.*

The same Stone, or to speak more properly, such a like one may be found in the gizzard of an old Hen; and why might not a man draw a conclusion, and think it rational when he hath done, that the male is medicinal, yea most medicinal for men; and that which is found in a hen for women.

47. *A direction to apply Cupping-glasses.*

The best way to apply Cupping-glasses, is to heat

heat them first in hot water, by putting the glasses in when the water is cold, (else they will break) and so letting them heat with the water, and so apply them close to the part of the body to be cupped; and as they cool, so the Air in them will condense; and to avoid *Vacuum*, draw the humours through the pores of the skin.

48. *Directions to set bowed Ribs.*

By this means, may bowed Ribs be drawn to their proper places, and the skull it self when it is broken, and that without pain; this way is ten times better than firing them with Tow, as the loggerheads of our Age use to do.

49. *Against the Dropsie.*

Centauray usually taken will prevent a Dropsie before it come, and help it being come, viz. by drinking the decoction of it in Ale.

50. *Against the Gout.*

The seeds of Hen-bane being wrapped up in the leaves of the same herb, and so roasted in the embers well, and then bruised and pressed hard through Canvas in a press, there will come out a precious Oyl for the Gout, the grieved member being anointed with it.

51. *A Sympathetical Observation.*

I make no question but the ingenious may easily find a way to keep this all the year, the herb being only to be had in the beginning of the Summer.

I fancy the Receipt much; it doth it by Sympathy; I regard not the opinion of Artists, most of which hold that Hen-bane is an herb of *Jupiter*, which I disprove by this argument.

That herb which delights in *Saturnine* places, is a *Saturnine* Herb.

But Hen-bane delights in *Saturnine* places; viz where they empty Jakes, and naturally springs there in abundance; Ergo it is a *Saturnine* Herb.

52. *A Physical Observation.*

Another thing to be admired in our Physicians, (for indeed their ignorance is admirable to every knowing soul) is, that Hen-bane (say they) is only profitable in hot Gouts, not in cold, because it is cold it self, whereas indeed it cures by Sympathy; and their Rule, *Contraria Contrariis medentur*, is but a wooden and worm-eaten rule; for how then could hot things do good in a Feaver?

53. *To provoke Urine.*

Vervain boiled in water, provokes Urine exceedingly; but you must drink the decoction; it is not the boiling of it will do the deed.

54. *To bring Freckles out of the Face.*

The distilled water of green-Walnuts, is excellent good to take the Freckles out of the face; but Oyl drawn out the Kernels is better.

55. *An approved cure for the Colick.*

Take Cummin and Carraway seed, and having bruised them well, boil them in Ale, till it be thick; this eaten with a spoon is an excellent remedy for the Colick.

56. *Against the biting of a Spider.*

If any be bitten by a Spider, take a great quantity of Flies, and bruise them, and apply them to the place.

57. *To preserve the Teeth.*

Anoint thy cheek with Horse-grease, and thy



gums also, and thy Teeth will cease rotting.

58. *Against swollen Legs and Feet.*

An Oyntment made with Hogs-grease, and Mugworts, and a little Vinegar, is excellent for the swelling of the Legs and Feet.

59. *An admirable approved remedy against griping of the Guts, and Worms.*

Rue infused all night in Sack, and the Sack drunk the next morning, is excellent good for Worms and wringing in the Guts.

60. *Against Rheum in the Eyes.*

Beat the white of an Egg, and then wet a Colewort leaf in it, and lay it to the Eye that runs a water, at night when you go to bed, and by morning it will help you.

61. *Against the Stone.*

Take a Kid of about a year and a half old, & having fed him 3 days without water, kill him and take his Blood, and when it is cold, pour the water away from it: then dry the Blood, till it be hard; a dram of this Blood, and half a dram of Ivy-berries taken in white-Wine every morning, will break the Stone in the body.

62. *To cure a Wen.*

For a Wen, bind him about as hard as you can endure, then make a salve with Verdegriee, Brimstone, Allum and Honey, and lay it to it, and it will consume it.

63. *Against the Strangury.*

Take a soft piece of sappy Wood, lay it in the fire, and save the Sap that runs out; the which make into a Pultis with Bran, the which lay between the Navil and the Privities of one that hath the Strangury, and it will help him.

64. *Against*

64. *Against Bleeding at the Nose.*

If thy Nose bleed, chew the herbs Peruinkle in thy mouth, and it will cease.

65. *To drive away Flies.*

Vervain boiled, and the house sprinkled with the decoction, drives Flies out of it.

66. *For a Belly that is Bound.*

A Suppository made of white Sope, and put up the fundament, is a medicine inferior to none for one that is costive.

67. *To provoke Urine.*

The roots of Flower-de-luce bruised, and boiled in white-Wine, are an excellent provoker of Urine.

68. *Against the Head-ache.*

Camomile and Betony, of each an equal quantity boiled in Vinegar to a pultis, and applied warm to the Head, helps the Megrim and the inveterate Head-ache called κεφαλαία.

69. *Another for the same.*

Rosemary-tops boiled in Ale in like manner, and applyed to the temples doth the like.

70. *Against a costive Belly.*

If thou be costive, ('tis an hundred to one if choler be not the cause, but if not) boil the herb Mercury in thy pottage instead of herbs, and let them be but half boiled; this pottage so eaten, will not only take away the effects by making the body slippery, but also the cause.

71. *Against an old Cough.*

Take of Rue, Sage and Cummin-seeds bruised, of each a handful, beaten Pepper half an ounce; make a strong decoction of them in water, the which boil into a Syrup with Honey, this Syrup will help an inveterate Cough, by taking

## Culpeper's last Legacies,

one spoonful of it in the morning, and another at evening.

72. *Against noise in the Ears.*

Three drops of a mans own Water put into his Ear every morning warm, helps the noise there.

73. *Against the same*

A strong decoction made with Plantane in white-Wine, drunk every morning, doth the like.

74. *Against swoln Eyes.*

An Oyntment made with Ivy-leaves and Hogs-grease, is excellent for the Swelling of the Eyes.

75. *Against the Head-ache  
and Lethargy.*

Take three or four great Onions, and having rosted them well in the embers, take off the outward pill, then bruise them with a few Cummin-seeds in powder; this applied Plaisterwise, in a few times using helps the Head-ach.

This I am perswaded, the Hair being shaven off, is a good remedy for the Lethargy.

76. *A Pultis for any Swelling.*

Take Wormwood and Mallows, of each a like quantity, boil them in water, till they be soft, then by adding Barley-meal, or Ma't-flower (which is better) and a little Vinegar and Sheeps-fuet to them, they make an excellent Pultis for any Swelling whatsoever.

77. *Against swoln Legs.*

The liquor wherein Neats-feet have been boil'd, is an excellent Bath to bathe swollen Legs in, and if you will add Chickweed, Mallows, and Smallage to it, 'twill be never the worse.

78. *Against*



78. *Against the same.*

Also, when you have well bathed your Legs therein, you may take out the herbs and apply them to the soles of your feet.

79. *To encrease Milk in Nurses.*

The juice of Vervain, or if it be time of year you cannot get it, take the Decoction of the dried herb, it mightily encreaseth not barely Milk, but good Milk in Nurses.

80. *To break the Stone in the Bladder.*

The blood of a Hare dried and taken inwardly, breaks the Stone in the Bladder.

81. *A remedy for such as cannot hold their Urine.*

The claws of a Goat burnt to powder, and a dram of the powder taken in the morning, helps such as cannot hold their water.

82. *Against over flowing of the Terms.*

To drink an Allum-poffet is a good remedy for over-flowing of a Womans Menstrua's.

83. *Against pissing of Blood.*

The juice of Sorrel, mixed with the like quantity of Milk, is an excellent remedy (being drunk) for pissing of Blood.

84. *To cure Warts.*

Pidgeons dung mixed with Vinegar is excellent to anoint Warts with, if you would be rid of them.

85. *To cure the Megrim.*

The juice of Primrose-roots insuffed up into the Nose, is an excellent remedy for the Megrim.

86. *Against Deafness.*

Take an Onion, and having cut a round hole in the middle of it, fill it full of Oyl, then roast it by a gentle fire, and having taken off the out-

ward pill, stamp it together and apply it warm to the deaf Ear to restore hearing.

87. *To cure a Burn.*

An Oyntment made with Leek-blades and Hogs-grease is excellent good for Burnings.

88. *Against the yellow Jaundice.*

A decoction of Earth-worms, Sallendine and Ivy-berries in white-Wine, take equal quantities of each, is an excellent remedy for the yellow Jaundice; and if towards the latter end of the decoction you add a little Saffron tyed up in a rag, 'twill be the better.

89. *Against a Scald.*

Take roots of female Fern, such as in *Sussex* are called Brakes, and having bruised them well, mix some raw Cream with them; so have you an excellent plaister for a Scald. He that hath any wit, may make an Unguent or Plaister of them to keep always by him.

90. *To cure the Hemorrhoids.*

The powder of burnt Garlick helps the Hemorrhoids, being strewed upon the place.

91. *For the same.*

The powder of Anniseeds strewed there, doth the like.

92. *Another for the same.*

A roasted Onion laid to the place, works the same effect.

93. *A cooling and drying Oyntment.*

An excellent cool Oyntment for Wounds that have Inflammations, is thus made; take of Letharge of Gold very finely powdered, as much as you will, and with Oyl of Roses and Verjuice of each equal parts, make it into an Oyntment by stirring it up and down in a Mortar, without the heat

heat of the fire, as it cools, so it dries exceedingly.

94. *Against an ache in the Legs  
and Arms.*

For Ache in the Legs or Arms, a precious remedy; take very stale Ale, and with the Gaul of an Ox, boil it till it be as thick as Birdlime, when it is cold, then anoint the grieved member with it by the fire, (it will be fluid when 'tis hot) as hot as he can endure it, and when it is dried in once or twice, spread some of it upon a piece of white Leather, and apply to it; when it is hard take it off and apply to it another, the former will wax soft again, thus doing three or four days will help you.

95. *Against the Megrim.*

For the Megrim, put some *Assa fetida* into the Ear on that side the pain lies, and the matter causing the disease will come out at the Nose.

And yet it may (by my Authors leave) be some question whether the Megrim lie within the Scul, or without.

96. *To provoke Urine.*

Take Snails, shells and all, and burn them in a crucible, till the ashes be white; half a dram of this taken in white-Wine is a great provoker of Urine.

97. *Against the Tooth-ache.*

Take a quantity of Water-grass, that part of it that grows above the water, and having beaten it, press out the juice, this juice a little of it being dropped into the contrary Ear of one that hath the Tooth-ache, cures him of that pain (for ever, saith my Author.)



## Culpeper's last Legacies.

98. To stanch the Bleeding  
at the Nose.

Take a piece of Blew cloth (woolen cloth) the deeper the Blew, the better, burn it to powder; a little of this powder snuffed up the nose, stops the bleeding of it.

99. *A Vomit and a Purge.*

It is certain, and by daily experience verified, that Elder-bark, if you slip it upward, will provoke vomiting; if downward, it purgeth by stool.

Its property is to cleanse the Body of crudities and indigestion, and they cause three quarters of the Diseases in man; you need but run to an Elder-tree for the cure, and you may find one a great deal on this side *Arabia*; if your stomach trouble you, slip it upward; but if the Disease afflict not the first digestion, then slip it downwards.

## 100. To help a Woman in Travail.

*Polipodium* stamped and plaistered upon the feet of a Woman labouring with Child, causeth the birth of the Child presently, either alive or dead.

101. To know if the Sick will  
live or die.

Take the grease of a Hog, and rub the body of any that is sick against the heart, and the soles of the feet, then throw the grease to a dog; if he eat it, the sick will live; if not, he will die.

## 102. Against Deafness.

Take a green Elm or Ashen stick, and put it in the fire, and save the water that comes out at the ends, and mix it with the fat of an Eel the like quantity, boil it a little over the fire, and drop

Drop a drop or two of it into the Ear that is deaf at night when you go to bed ; let it be lukewarm when you drop it in, and in three or four days they will hear perfectly.

103. *Another against Deafness.*

Also the juice of Bay-leaves dropped into the Ears, takes away both deafness and noise in the Ears. *Pet. Hsp.*

104. *Against an Ache.*

For ache in the Bones, anoint the place three or four times with good *Aqua Composita*, and let it dry in by a good fire, then anoint it again, and while it is wet strew the powder of *Olibanum* upon it, then sew a cloth round about it, and let it lie there three or four days, by which time it will be well.

105. *To preserve and perfume Clothes.*

Bay leaves, a thing known well,  
Laid up among your Clothes,  
Will give to them a fragrant smell,  
And keep them safe from Moths.

*Dioscorides.*

106. *Against Deafness.*

Ants-eggs beaten, and strained, and a little of the juice of Knotgrass put to the juice of them, and a little of it dropped into the ear, cures Deafness, though of long continuance.

107. *For cold Eyes.*

Drop a drop of good *Aqua composita* into the Eye that is annoyed with cold, and you will find it a present remedy to recover the sight.

108. *Against the Dropsie in the Legs.*

For Legs that are swollen by water, this do and you may heal them ; seeth Oats in water till they be soft, then hold the swoln Legs over the steem of them, covering the Vessel with a Blanket,

Blanket, that the steem may not go out, and it will draw blisters, out of which (being cut) will come much water and corruption; a little fresh butter will quickly heal them again; if the cure be not perfect the first time, do so oftner.

109. *A knitter for Wounds  
or Ruptures.*

*Dandelion*, (or to write better *French, Dent-de-lion*, for our Country-Blades are so nice, that they scorn to call it by the plain *English* name, *Lyons-tooth*) being boiled in water, is a special remedy for the knitting of wounds, as also for the cure of Ruptures, the decoction being drunk, and the boiled herb applyed to the grieved place.

110. *To cure Ulcers.*

Put unslaked Lime into a clean new earthen vessel, till the vessel be almost half full; then having heat some water boiling hot in a clean new vessel, pour it into the Lime till the vessel be full, take off the scum from it clean, and let it stand till the Lime be settled at the bottom; then pour off the clear water, and keep it in a glass close stopp'd.

This is a marvellous Water for the cure of Ulcers, and chiefly such as spring from the *French-Pox*, by dipping a linnen cloth in it, and laying it as a Plaster over the sore; it draws the corruption out of Ulcers and putrified Sores, cleanseth them, and takes away the inflammation of them; this Water *Mizaldus* extols to the skies.

111. *To provoke the Birth.*

A dram of Myrrh given to drink in warm  
Wine



Wine brings forth the Child, alive or dead:

*112. Against the Tooth-ache.*

A piece of the root of Crowfoot, either put into the tooth, if it be hollow, or otherwise applied to it, instantly easeth the pains of it.

*113. To cleanse the Breast, and clear the Voice.*

Centauray taken, either the juice or powder of it, clears the Voice, and cleanseth the breast marvellously,

*114. Against the Gout.*

Pigeons dung boiled in Wine till the Wine be consumed, and then applied Plaisterwise to the Gout, takes it away (being used morning and evening) in four or five days.

*115. Against the Pleurisie, and tough Flegm.*

Nettle-seed beaten into powder, and taken with Syrup of Violets cleanseth the stomach of tough and hard Flegm, and helps the Pleurisie.

*116. A present cure for the Gout.*

If the pain of the Gout be very outrageous, take a dram of *Opium*, two drams of Saffron; mix them with four or five yolks of Eggs, and plaister the same upon the grief, it will not onely assuage the pain, but also dissolve the corruption.

*117. To cure the Piles or Hemorrhoids.*

Heat two or three Bricks red hot, then put them in a Pan under a close-stool, and pour a little Vinegar upon them, and let him that is troubled with the Hemorrhoids (commonly called the Piles) sit over them, and receive the vapours up his fundament.

*118. Against the Gout.*

The juice of Broom-flowers, of *Scala Cæli*, common-

commonly called *Solomons seal*, and of Honey, of each a like quantity; boiled to the thicknes of Honey, maketh a soveraign Oyntment for the Gout.

119. *Against the Tooth-ache.*

A little Gun-powder tyed up in a rag, and held so in the mouth, that it may touch the aking tooth, instantly caseth the pains of the Teeth.

120. *Against the yellow Jaundice.*

Tye Saffron up in a little rag, and bind it to the Navil of one that hath the yellow Jaundice, it gives present help.

121. *Against the Megrin or Head-ache.*

Take the roots of Beets, and pare off the outer bark, then stamp them, and having pressed out the juice, snuff some of it up your nose, and you shall find it wonderfully purgeth the head, and helps the Head-ache, Vertigo or dizziness in the head and Megrin.

122. *To cure the Kings-evil.*

*Cardonius*

The feet of a great living Toad being cut off when the Moon is void of course, and hastens to the conjunction of the Sun, cures one of the Kings-evil, being hung about their neck.

123. *To stanch Blood.*

Tye up a Spider in a linnen cloth, and there bruise her a little, and hold her near the nose that bleedeth, but touch not the nose with the cloth, and the bleeding will cease; the reason is, because a Spider is so extreemly contrary to the blood of man, that it flies back from its Enemy: Oh *Campanella*, how acute was thy judgment! how is the World beholding thee!

The truth of this Aphorism appears in that

Cobweb, which is but the excrement of a Spider, will stop the bleeding of a wound.

124. *Another for the same.*

An approved remedy to stop bleeding, which I have proved my self, is this : Dry some of the parties blood in a fire-shovel to powder, which is quickly done, and apply it to the place, viz. if the nose bleed, snuff it up in it ; if by the wound, apply it to it.

125. *Against the Bloody-flux.*

The blood of a Hare dried, and taken inwardly, helps the bloody-flux.

126. *Another.*

So doth the Bones of a man or woman, taken in powder, the sex considered.

127. *Another.*

Also one experience of mine own invention give me leave to quote, for a bloody-flux.

Take new Tobacco-pipes thas were never used, beat them to powder ; and give a dram of them at a time, in any convenient liquor, morning and evening ; but so soon as the Flux is stopp'd, leave off.

This I found out in this manner, when I was a Prentise, a Gentleman in *Tower-street* gav a poor boy money (as I remember, five shillings) to eat one gross of Tobacco-pipes, (which is twelve dozen) the Boy did it, but was troubled with such an astringency, that neither Clysters, nor any thing else, would move him to stool, and so he died ; whereupon I apprehended the thing, and have always used it, in the manner above said, with good success.

128. *To cure the Gout.*

Take of black Soap, as much as is sufficient, *J. Ardon.*  
mix



mix it with half the quantity of yolks of Eggs very well, then spread it upon fine flax, and apply it to the place grieved with the Gout; then take whites of Eggs, mix them with a little Wheat-flower, and wet a linnen cloth in it, and it over the former Plaister, and let it lie so four or five days, in which time you shall see the wonderful effects.

129. *To cure Imposthumes.*

Bruise Barley, dry Beans, and Liquoris, of each alike, in fair water, and drink a good draught of the liquor, morning and evening, it breaks and cures any Imposthume.

130. *To expell Payson.*

*Pet. Hisp.* Egrimony most wonderfully expelleth Poyson, and with great facility helpeth the bitings of venomous beasts.

131. *Against the Falling-sickness.*

The hoof of an Elk (called *Ungula Alcis*) hath a marvelous power against the Falling-sickness, either taken inwardly or born next the skin, whereof you have plentiful examples in *Lemnius*, *Mizaldus*, and *Johannes Agricola*.

132. *Against spitting of Blood.*

Torrified Rhubarb taken in the morning, is an admirable remedy for spitting blood.

133. *Another.*

Syrup of Comfry is also very profitable for the same infirmity, and in my opinion the best of the two, if any Vessel be broken.

134. *For a Boyl, or Plague-fore.*

Bay-salt, dried and beaten into fine powder, and well incorporated with Yolks of Eggs, is an admirable plaister for Boyls, Carbuncles, or Plague-fores.

135. *Against the Jaundice.*

The leaves or roots of Strawberries, eaten in pottage, is a marvellous remedy for the Jaundice.

136. *Against Poyson.*

Juniper-berries are a great counter-poyson.

*Dioscori-  
des.*

137. *For pain of the Back.*

*Pet. Hisp.*

Egrimony, Mugwort and Betony, both roots and leaves of each, made into an Oyntment, with Hogs-grease, and Vinegar, is a notable and approved Oyntment for pains in the back.

138. *Against Fistulaes.*

For Fistulaes, if they appear outward, tent them with the juice of the herb Culverfoot [*pes Columbinus*] but if it be inward, drink the juice of it.

139. *For a Surfeit.*

Betony boiled in Wine, and drunk, is a notable remedy for a Surfeit.

140. *To procure Appetite.*

Centaury, either boiled in Wine, or taken in powder four or five days together, wonderfully helps such as have lost their Appetite to their Viſuals.

141. *To prevent Poyson.*

Whosoever drinks the powder of Betony in Wine every morning, no poyson shall hurt him the day following.

142. *To keep Hair from growing.*

The dung of a Cat dried and mixed with Vi-Mixaldum.

negar till it be pretty soft, takes away hairs, and hinders their growing any more, the place being anointed with it.

143. *To help a Woman in Travail.*

*Pet. Hisp.* Dragons bound to the privities of a Woman in labour, causeth her speedily to be delivered; but then you must quickly take them away, lest they draw down Matrix and all.

144. *Against Deafness.*

The grease of an Eele, boiled a little with the juice of Housleek, and a little of it dropped into a deaf ear, recovers the hearing in a short space.

145. *Against a Fistula or Ulcer.*

*Pet. Hisp.* The juice of Plantane cast into an Ulcer or Fistula with a Syringe, heals it; and so also doth the juice of Betony and Cinquefoyl.

146. *Against Deafness.*

An accurate and (in my opinion) famous remedy for Deafness is this: Take a great Onion, and cut a little hole in the midst of it, then set it in the embers to roast, and fill the hole full of Sallet-oyl, and ever as it dries, fill it up again, till the Onion be roasted well; then take off the outmost skin, and strain the Onion hard through a cloth, and save in a glass what you have strained out, which being dropped into the deaf ear, cures it.

147. *Against the falling down of the Fundament.*

For the falling down of the Fundament, a disease which some are almost perpetually troubled with all their life long, this do; take the tops of red-Nettles, stamp them and boil them in a Pipkin in white wine, till half the Wine be consumed; then let the diseased drink a draught of



of this Wine morning and evening, and apply the Nettles so boiled to his Fundament.

148. *Against the stinging of Scorpions.*

Engrave the sign of a Scorpion in the stone of *Alex. Jov. Pontanus.* a ring, the Moon ascending in the Scorpion, and seal Frankincense with it, the Moon angular in the same Sign (I suppose the Southern is best, because that signifies Physick and help) this Frankincense thus sealed being drunk in Wine, instantly cures the stinging of Scorpions, and for ought I know, by the same rule, the stinging and biting of any other venomous beast.

149. *Against Ulcers, Gout, Quartanes, French-Pox, Agues, and to fix Metals.*

Take white Soap, and when it is finely scraped *Falopius.* put so much good *Aqua-vitæ* to it; put them into a large Retort, and lute a large Receiver to it very well; distill it in sand, first with a gentle fire, then encrease the fire by degrees, and there will come out an Oyl mixed with Water.

This Oyl is incombustible, and its vertues are Remem- many, both in Alchymy, to fix volatile medicines, *ber Venus.* & in melting, to incorporate Metals; but in Physick, which is my present scope, it is of admirable and almost incredible vertue; for it asswageth all Swellings, though of never so gross and clammy humours, healeth the malignant Ulcers, the Gout, Quartan-Ague, French-Pox, dry scalled-heads.

150. *Against a Fistula.*

*Pet. Hisp.*

Egrimony is the herb appropriated for the *Gordonius*

cure of Fistulaes, use it which way you please, as you see occasion.

151. *To cure a Pin and Web.*

Break the great bone of the Goose-wing (the older the Goose is the better) and take out the marrow, with which anoint the Web or Pearl in the Eye, and it will take it away and restore the sight.

152. *To restore Sight.*

The herb and root of Tormentil boiled in Wine, and the Wine drunk, and the herb laid plaisterwise upon the Eyes, restores the sight, though it have been lost many years.

153. *For short Breath.*

*Em. Ben.  
vict. Pa-  
ventin.*

The roots of Hollioke, powdered and mixed with three times their weight in Honey, is an admirable remedy for shortness of breath.

154. *For Womens Breasts that are swelled,  
(a usual thing in young Nurses.)*

*Lady  
Owen.*

Take and bruise nine Wood-lice, called by some, Hog-lice; by others Sows) let them remain all night in eight or nine spoonfuls of drink; in the morning strain it, and let the Woman drink it up at one draught, and lay to her breast a Linnen cloth, warmed and doubled three or four times; the next morning let her take eight of the said Lice used as before, the next morning seven, still diminishing one every morning, till she comes to take but one.

If her Breast be not well by that time, let her increase them one by one every morning, as before she subtracted them.

155. *For a Swelling.*

Take Linseed, Brooklime, Chickweed, and Groundsell,

*his Physical, Chyrurgical Remains.*

101

Groundsell, and Wheat-bran, of each a handful, boil them in a bottle of white-Wine to a Cataplasm (which the Vulgar call a Pultis) and lay it to any member that is swollen, and it will take away the swelling speedily.

*156. For a Stinking breath.*

Let him whose stinking Breath proceeds from his stomack, do this and be well.

Bruise two handfuls of Cummin-seed very well, and boil it in a bottle of white-Wine to a quart, and drink a good draught of it, morning and evening, and in a fortnight it will help him.

*157. To take off Warts.*

Put the feet of a Hen in hot embers, till the scales come off, then rub your Warts with those scales, and they will be gone. *Pet. Hist.*

*158. To chear the spirits and complexion.*

Beat a pound or two of Hemp-seed very well, then moisten it with a little Wine, and set it over the fire, in an earthen pan, well glassed, till it be so hot you cannot endure your hand in it, then put it into square baggs, and press the Oyl out.

It is a very precious Oyl, for taken inwardly, it makes men pleasant and merry, valiant and hardy, fierce to fight, void of fear; outwardly by Unction, it giveth a comely face.

*159. To cure the Gout.*

A pint of *Aqua Composita*, a Bullocks gall, and an ounce of Pepper, beaten very small, and all boiled to a salve, cures any Sciatica, Ach or Gout, being applied to it, and changed once in twelve hours.



## Culpeper's last Legacies,

160. *To take off Warts.*

Pet; Hissp.

Both Egrimony and Purslain are such enemies to Warts, that they will go away if they be but rubbed with the juice of either of them.

161. *Against Swoln Cods.*

For Cods that be swoln, without any Rupture, this do; take of Cummin-seed in powder, Barley-meal and Honey, of each a like quantity, fry them together with a little Sheeps-suet, and apply it to the Cod.

162. *For a sore swollen Throat.*

For a sore and swoln Throat, first rub your hands upon the bare ground, and then presently rub the Throat with it; do so oftentimes, and you shall quickly perceive both soreness and swelling will quickly go away.

163. *To ripen and break a Boyl.*

Possiet and curd is an excellent thing to ripen any Boyl Carbuncle or Felon; and when it is ripe, there is nothing better to break it, than unslaked Lime mixed with black Soap.

164. *Against hot rheums in the Eyes.*

Fill an Egg-shell newly emptied with the juice of Housleek, set it in the hot embers, and take the scum from it, then strain it, and you have an excellent remedy for hot, burning, pricking eyes.

165. *To cure a Bruise.*

Egrimony, Betony, Sage, Plantane, Ivy-leaves, and Rose-parisley, boiled in Wine, and the decoction drunk, is a notable remedy for such as are bruised by falling.

166. *To prevent and break the Stone in the Bladder.*

If you burn Turpentine upon a hot plate of Iron.

Iron, and give two drams of it at a time in powder, in Saxifrage-water, it will break the stone in the bladder; also by taking it once or twice a week, it keeps such fate from the stone as are subject to breed it.

Em. Ben.  
vict. Fa.  
ventia.

167. *Against the Palsey.*

Lavender boiled in water, and half a pint of the decoction drunk, morning and evening, helps such as have the Palsey.

168. *To cure the Strangury.*

Take a pint of *Aqua Composita*, and put a handful of Ivy-leaves into it, and stop it close, and they will consume in it; two or three spoonfuls of it taken at a time, is a most excellent remedy for the Strangury.

169. *Against the Sciatica.*

Take a pound of black Soap, a pint of Sallet-oil, half a pint of *Aqua vite*, a quarter of a pint of juice of Rue, boiled together till it be thick, makes an admirable plaister for the Sciatica; remove it not in two or three days.

170. *Against cold Aches.*

Take of the wood of Ivy, cut it in little pieces, of Ivy-berries, and the gum of Ivy, of each alike weight; let the Wood be dried, then put it in a pot that hath two or three little holes in the bottom; then set another pot up to the brim in the Earth, and put the bottom of the first pot into the mouth of the last, luting it round with paste, so that the uppermost pot that holds the ingredients may be all above the Earth; then make a fire round about it, and there will a black Oyl distill into the neither Vessel, very sovereign for old Aches, and pains coming of a cold cause.

Rogerius,  
&  
Euonimus

## 171. To cure the Dropsie.

Empty an Egg of all the white, and fill up the void place of the shell with juice of Flower-de-luce; then warm it a little in the hot embers, and give it every morning to one that hath the Dropsie, and it makes them avoid the Hydropical humour downwards.

172. An admirable Medicine to stop Fluxes of Blood in any part of the body, the Menstruas in Women, any Aches, Impediments in the Back and Liver, it allays the heat in Feavers, and causeth sleep.

Galen.

Take Cinamon, *Cassia lignea*, Opium, of each 2 drams; Myrrh, white and long Pepper, of each one dram; Galbanum, one dram; all being beaten into powder that can be beaten, make it into a mass, with clarified Honey, and let the party diseased as before, take two pills of it, no bigger then a pea, at night going to bed.

## 173. To expell a dead Child.

Wecker.

Take the quantity of an Almond of a Bulls gall, and mix it with two or three Spoonfuls of Wine, and let a Woman that hath a dead Child in her body, drink it, and she shall instantly be delivered.

174. An excellent Oyl for old Wounds, Sores, Issues, Ulcers, Aches, pains in the Back, Hemorrhoids, Gout.

Apsius,  
quoted  
by George  
Baker.

Take of old white-Wine a quart, old Oyl three pints, *Carduus benedictus*, Valerian, Sage with the flowers, if you can get it, of each a quarter of a pound; of the leaves and flowers of Saint Johns-wort half a pound; let the Herbs and Flowers



Flowers be infused in the Oyl and Wine four and twenty hours, then boil it in an earthen vessel, well glazed, or a brass vessel, till the Wine be consumed, stirring it now and then for fear of burning; then take it off, and strain it, and add to it a pound and a half of *Venice Turpentine*, and boil it again a quarter of an hour; then add to it, *Olibanum*, five ounces; Myrrh, three ounces; *Sanguis Draconis*, one ounce; let it boil a little till the Myrrh be dissolved, then take it off, and when it is cold, put it in a glass, stop it close, and let it stand in the Sun ten days before you use it.

175. *To break the Stone in the Kidneys.*

The body of a Birch-tree, cut down in the spring time, and laid in the fire, doth yield great store of water, which water being drunk is of wonderful force to break the Stone in the Reins. *Matthiol. Dioscorides.*

176. *Against Fits of the Mother.*

The smell of Bitumen, Rue, or the smoke of it burning, is of wonderful force against the fits of the Mother. *Mixaldus. Monardus.*

177. *To ease the Gout-pains.*

The leaves and bark of a Willow-tree sopt in Wine, doth ease the Gout, being bathed with it.

178. *Against the Head-ache.*

A Diamond held to the head that akes, quite takes away the pains thereof. *Hollerius.*

179. *Against watery Eyes.*

*Mizaldus* Pieces of Amber tyed to the nape of the neck, helps the watering of the Eyes.

180. *Against distillations of the Throat.*

*Mizaldus* The same hung about the neck, helps distillations of the Throat.

181. *To make the Skin white.*

*Mizaldus* Letharge of Silver boiled in Vinegar, and the skin washed with it, makes it exceeding white.

182. *To cure a lame Beast.*

If any great Beasts, as Horses, Kine, &c. be lame, mark where the lame or swelled foot doth stand, and cut up a Turf where the foot stood, and hang it up, if the weather be hot and dry, upon a white Thorn, else in the Chimney-corner; and as fast as that dries the swelling will cease, and the pain go away.

183. *To take spots out of Clothes.*

The water wherein Lavender hath been boyled, will take away any spot or stain out of any Cloth.

184. *To strengthen the Heart and Back.*

*Andreas Cordulensis.* Let the Image of a Lion be engraven in a plate of Gold, when *Sol* is in *Leo*; let not the *Moon* behold the sixth House, nor yet the Lord of the Ascendant behold *Saturn* nor *Mars*, (if it be not a Systeme too rare to find) neither let the *Moon* behold them; this strengthens the Heart being worn against it; as also pains in the back, being worn against that.

185. *To break the Stone.*

Also if Trochisks be made with *Olibanum* and Goats blood, and sealed with the said Plate, and afterwards dissolved and drunk in white-Wine, it breaks the stone in the reins and bladder.

186. *For the Memory, Brain, and Stomack.*

The whitest of Frankincense beaten in powder *Razis*,  
and drunk in white-Wine, wonderfully encrea- *Mixaldus*  
seth the Memory, and is profitable for the brain  
and stomach.

187. *To cure a Quartane Ague.*

Any part of the Bone of a mans Arm, with the *Mixaldus*  
biggest end of a Goose-wing, being born about *Geber*.  
one that hath the Quartane-Ague, cures them.

188. *To make a Tooth drop out.*

The powder of Earth-worms, of Mice-dung,  
and of a Hares-tooth, put into the hole of a rot-  
ten Tooth, it will drop out without any instru-  
ment.

189. *To cure a Pin and Web in the Eye.*

There is a stone to be found in the head of a *Mixaldus*  
long Snail, which being beaten into fine powder  
and blown into the Eye, takes away the Web,  
spots or other infirmities that annoy it.

190. *To preserve from Cold Diseases.*

A spoonful of Aqua-vitæ, sweetned with Su-*Lennius*.  
gar, (and a little grated white bread put in it, that  
it may not annoy the brain, nor harm the Liver)  
taken every day, preserves folk not only from Le-  
thargies and Apoplexies, but also from all Cold  
diseases.

191. *An excellent Cordial water.*

Take one part of Gentian, and two parts of  
Centaury, bruise them and infuse them five days  
in a convenient quantity of Wine, then distill  
them.

This water being drunk, preserves the body in *Julius &*  
health, resisteth the Plague, causeth a good color, *Evonimus*  
cureth Imposthumes and Ptylicks, stuffings of the  
Stomack and Spleen; provoketh the Terms, pur-  
geth



geth choler and corrupt blood, healeth inward wounds, and the biting of venemous Beasts, and clears the sight.

192. *Against the Plague.*

*Alexis.* A most excellent remedy for the Plague, is this; take Ivy-berries when they are ripe, and dry them, then take half a dram of the powder of them in Plantane-water, and sweat upon it.

193. *To cure a Tetter.*

Stamp Celendine, and apply it to any Tetter or Ringworm, and it will quickly cure it.

194. *To cure a Spot.*

The small herb by like usage, will take away any black spot from any part of the body.

195. *To cure the Tooth ache for ever.*

Let the party that is troubled with the Tooth-ache, lye on the contrary side, and drop two or three drops of the juice of Rue into his ear, on that side his Teeth-ake, and let it remain an hour or two, it will not only take away the pain for the present, but he shall never be troubled with it after.

196. *To cure a sore Breast.*

For Womens breasts that are sore, beat a handful of Figgs well, and mix them with a little Hogs-grease, and apply it to the Breast as hot as can be suffered; if the Breast be ready to break, it will break, else not.

197. *To provoke Urine.*

Take good Saffron in powder, and mix it with as much black Soap, and spread it on the fleshy-side of a piece of Leather, and lay it to the Navil of one that cannot make water, and in one hour you shall see the effects of it.

198. *To cure the Gout.*

The roots of Holly-oak, stamped with Hogs-<sup>Pet. Hiss.</sup>grease, and applied to the Gout, helps it in three days.

199. *Against the Head-ache, and noise in the Ears ; and to fetch any thing out of the ears.*

Verjuyce sod, and put hot into a Tin-bottle, with a narrow mouth, and the mouth of the bottle held to the Ear, that the fume may go up into the head, helps the Head-ache, and noise in the Ears ; and if any quick thing be gotten into the Ear, it will quickly bring it out.

---

A

---





A  
TREATISE  
OF THE  
PESTILENCE,

With its } PREVISION,  
          } PROVISION,  
          } PREVENTION.

---

By NICHOLAS CULPEPER,  
Student in Astrology and Physick.

---



---

L O N D O N,  
Printed for *Nath. Brooke* at the Angel in *Cornhil*, and  
*Obadiah Blagrove* at the Printing-Press in *Little-Brittain*, over against the Pump,  
1671.

They may be good in themselves and



A  
T R E A T I S E  
OF THE  
Pestilence.

CONsidering the reigning and raging of this Disease in *London*, and divers other Towns and Cities in *England*, and that large experience I have had in it now these ten years, considering also the terrible horror and affright that seiseth on most men and women to this day (though the disease have been no stranger to *London* this twelve years) if the disease be but within a House or two of them, yea some, if it be but in the Street, as though they were all dead men, I thought good to write a small Tractate of the Disease, studied from the grounds of Physick, and confirmed by daily experiences to leave behind me, for the benefit of Posterity, or my Survivors, be they who they will, which may be as a Present and a more honest help to them than running away, for hereby their minds being guided by more true, charitable and neighbourly principles, that they may do good to themselves and others, and



## Culpeper's last Legacies,

benefit they own experience in Physick, as I have done before them.

*Galen's three Adverbs, Cito, Longè, Tarde.* And this small Treatise (for I hate prolixity) may stand them in as much and more stead then *Galen's three Adverbs, Cito, Longè, Tarde, to Run away quickly, and far, and, To return not in a long time*; which he saith, (though untruly) is worth three Apothecaries shops well furnished.

*Cause threefold* The causes of this disease are three, yet all subservient, the one to the other.

*Cause 1.* The first cause, is the great Conjunctions of the Superior Planets meeting in the Signes, ruling such and such Countreys and Cities, or in Signes opposing, or squaring such Signes.

2. The second is a corrupted and unwholsome Air, which is caused by such meetings of the Planets.

3. The third is putrified humours, hot blood, adust, and burned, caused by breathing in such corrupt Air; and if the diet before were perverse, it adds fuel to the fire, and fills the body with superfluous humours.

A word or two now to satisfie men, concerning the common fear of Infection, which makes many rich men, which might and ought to maintain poor visited people; yea, many Physicians, whose duties it is to administer Physick to them, flye away, so that in time of great Infection, you may hear more cry out for lack of Bread, and means necessary, then for anguish of the Disease.

Hence also came that unnatural and inhumane custome of shutting up of Houses that are Visited, thereby sadding and dejecting their Spirits, and thereby making way for the disease; as I shall shew

shew anon ; and taking men from their usual employments, which is a digester of humours, and a preserver of health : Nay if the disease be Infectious ( as in their opinion it is ) it is plain murder, to shut men up in an infected and mortal Air.

But I shall prove by solid arguments, that the Pestilence is not infectious.

The  
Plague  
not infectious.

My first Argument I frame thus :

Arg. 1.

That Disease that infecteth one man that cometh neer it, infecteth all men that come neer it.

But the Plague infecteth not all.

Therefore it infecteth none.

The Minor is clear, as the Sun.

My Major I prove from the universal course of nature ; The fire warmeth one man, it warmeth all ; The water wetteth one man, it wetteth all, because their nature is so to do ; a sword woundeth one man, it woundeth all that are strook with it ; the universal current of nature runneth so ; therefore the Plague, if it infect one man, must infect all.

But some will say, all mens bodies are not full of humours ; if they were, all would be infected.

I answer, then by my Opposites argument the fault lies in the humours that are within the body, not in the Infection which is without ; if he flye, will these putrified humours continue in his body, and he remain in health ? if so, how then comes Diseases ?

You may find some notable proofs to the contrary, in my Astrological Experiences.

Or will an infected Air change a Disease, ( which would be but bad at the best ) if so, shew a Rule in Physick, and I am satisfied. \*

But cleanse the body of these humours, let

all men do so, and then come to a visited person, and then by my Opposites own confession they will not be infected; and how then can the Disease be infectious, and infect no body?

My second Argument I frame thus.

Arg. 2.

That Disease, the raining of which may be fore-seen by more secret causes in Nature long before it come, cannot be increased by visiting the sick, nor diminished by abstaining from them.

But the Pestilence may, and always is fore-seen long before it comes.

Therefore you will have it never the sooner by visiting those that are sick of it, nor escape ever a whit the longer by abstaining from it.

The Major is clear; for if the cause come, the effect must needs follow.

Signes of  
a Plague  
to come.

For the proof of the Minor, I shall produce twelve Signes of a Plague to come, which appear some of them above a year, yea some of them above two years before it come

1.

The first is *Phænomena* in the Air, great meetings of superior Planets, whereby not only the time, but also the place where the Pestilence will most rage, may be gathered, as this Autumnal Pestilence in *London* 1645, was by Mr. *Booker* in his Almanack, for that year, which was penned at Midsummer, 1644; also by Mr. *William Lilly* his *Anglicus*, Peace or no peace, left at the Printers Decemb. 1644.

The learned in Astrology may satisfie themselves without me; also Blazing-stars, and other strange Meteors, and supernatural sights and apparitions in the Air.

2.

The second, is the changing of the seasons, hot weather out of its season, and cold out of its season,



son, hot and dry weather a long time, upon Southwind, and many rains upon Northwinds.

The third is, when the small Pox and Measels vex not only Children, but Men and Women of perfect age, especially in the Spring. 3.

The fourth is, the winds holding a long time in the South or West. 4.

The fifth is, a dark and troubled Air a long time, without either rain or clear weather, or if after a long drought it rain without thunder. 5.

The sixth, when Women conceived with child, do suffer abortion for every light and slight cause. 6.

The seventh is, when in Summer time after rain, abundance of Frogs of divers colours gather together. 7.

The eighth, is a great number (more then ordinary) of flies, spiders, and creeping things, are seen in the Spring. 8.

The ninth is, death of four-footed beasts and fishes. 9.

The tenth is, Birds forsaking their nests, and leaving their eggs there. 10.

The eleventh is, dearth of corn and grain. 11.

The twelfth is, a hot and moist temperature of the year. 12.

But say some, if the Plague be not infectious, what is the reason when it comes into a house, sometimes all the house are sick of it, and sometime die of it?

This might be sufficiently answered by a retor-  
tive; If so be the Plague be infectious, what's the reason, many times but one in a house hath it, and all the rest, though perhaps they keep a worse  
Ans: All Diseases come by ill directions; therefore not by infection. Else no Nativity can safely be  
verified by accidents.

## Culpeper's last Legacies,

diet, yet escape? any that hath any judgment in Nativities, can give a reason of it easily.

Well, be it infectious or not infectious, prevented it may be as may other demonstrations of the Planets, if discretion be used, and therefore now to the purpose.

Preven-  
tion.

1.

And in the first place, let such as would avoid this Disease, avoid the fear of it; for fear changeth the blood into the nature of the thing feared, the imagination ruling the spirits natural, as is manifest in Womens conceptions.

2.

Secondly, let your body be kept soluble; if it be not so naturally, take a scruple of *Pillula Ruffi Psilentiales* at night when you go to bed.

3.

Thirdly, if your body be full of blood, bleed so much as strength and age permit.

4.

\* Fewer  
times will  
serve the  
turn.

Take a spoonful of Vinegar of Squils,\* three or four times a day, viz. at ten of the clock; after dinner, at four in the afternoon; and after Supper.

5.

Take the quantity of a Hazle-nut of this Electuary invented by *Mithridates*, that renowned King of *Pontus*, and the first Author also of that Electuary that bears his name to this day [*Mithridate*], every morning, often also used by the Emperour *Charles the Fifth*; of the vertues of which I have had large experience; it is thus made: Take of green Rue, gathered in the hour of *S. I.*, half a handful, blew Figs six and as many Walnuts, with forty Juniper-berries, and a little Bay-salt, beat into an Electuary.

6.

ps

Let all passions and perturbations of mind be avoided, together with all violent motions, for these inflame the blood so also doth drinking much Wine.

7.

Let the house be kept clean and pure, and always a good fire in it.

Let

Let the Diet be of good juice quick of digestion, and let him eat sharp things with his meats, such as Vinegar, Verjuice, Oranges juice of Lemmons and Citrons, or Pomegranats, let all fruits be avoided, except such as are sowre.

Let not the Stomack be charged with excess of meat or drink. 9.

In Summer-time let the blood be cooled with cool herbs, as Endiue, Lettuce, Purslain, Succory, and let the drink be Whey; clarified with them. 10.

Let him use the smells of Laudanum, Styrax, Calamitis, Camphire, Cinnamon, Nutmegs, wood of Aloes, liquid Storax, &c. 11.

Lastly, these things are preventional being taken inwardly, and resist the Disease, *consideratis considerandis*, viz. *Angelica*-roots, Zedoary, Bole-Armenick, *Terra Lemnia*, Mithridate, Treacle, Tormentill, and *Petasitis*-roots, and Citron-pills, with many other things too tedious to rehearse. 12.

And thus much for Preventions.

I come now to Provision for it, when Prevention is too late.

And first of all that Provision may be timely, I Twelve: begin with the signes of one infected, which are signes of one infected. twelve.

The first is when the outward Members be cold, the inward Members being burning hot. 1.

The second is heaviness, weariness, sloth and indisposition of the whole body, and difficulty in breathing. 2.

The third is pain and heaviness in the head. 3.

The fourth is carefulness of the mind and sadness. 4.

The fifth is a marvelous inclination to sleep, for the most part, for sometimes watching and raving vex them. 5.



6. The sixth is a frowning eye.
7. The seventh is loss of appetite.
8. The eighth is immoderate thirst, and often vomiting.
9. The ninth is bitterness and driness of the mouth.

10. The tenth is a pulse swift, small and deep.

11. The eleventh is Urine for the most part, turbid, thick and stinking, although I have seen the Urine of some that from the beginning of the disease, to the time of their dissolution, differed nothing from the Urine of healthy men; and indeed the Prognostication, in my opinion, was the worse; for I (as yet) never knew but two, whose Urine was so, and both were delivered by death, and not preserved by Physick; and therefore considering that *Urina est meretrix*, you must have an eye to the precedent and subsequent signes and sign.

12. The twelfth and most certain sign of all is, if there appear risings behind the ears, under the arm holes or in the groin, without any manifest cause known, or if Carbuncles arise suddenly in any other member.

*Prognostica.*

These when they rise shew nature is strong and able, because it thrusteth the venome from it in the beginning of the sickness, yea many times before the body perceives it self sick.

These Carbuncles appearing, shew which of the vitals is most affected with the malady, for if they appear about the ears, the brain is most annoyed, because that is the purging place of the brain.

If the rising appear under the Arms, the malady lyeth heaviest upon the Heart, for that is the purging place of the Heart.

But

But if it appear in the Groyn, the Liver is most infected; for the Groyn is the purging place thereof.

But if no rising at all appear, it fore-shews weakness of nature, and is most dangerous; for nature is weak, and not able to expell the venome.

When those spots appear that are called Tokens, they shew the whole Blood universally is corrupted; but of these hereafter.

If you feel your self infected first upon a full Cure.  
stomack, take a Vomit presently. Vomit.

Also in the beginning of the disease, let him Bleeding  
bleed on that side that the rising appears, if it appear in the Neck; bleed him in the *Cephalica* on that arm, viz. if it be on the right, bleed him in the right arm; if on the left side of the Neck, on the left arm.

If the rising appear under the Arm, bleed him in the *Basilica* of the Arm on that side the Carbuncle appears.

But if it appear in the Groyn, breathe the vein in the Ankles of the same side.

If none at all appear, consider which parts are most grieved with pains and aches, and proceed in blood-letting, according to the former rules.

Sweating also is a Sovereign remedy, which you sweat.  
may effect by some such medicines, as these, Mithridate, Venice-Treacle, *Matthiolus* his great Antidote, his Bezoar-water, Serpentary-roots, *Electuarium de Ovo*.

Let his blood be cooled with this or the like Ju-  
lep, and let him drink no other drink. Julep.

Take of Harts. horn and Ivory, of each an ounce and a half; of the flowers of Violets, Burrage, Bugloss, Clove-gilly-flowers, Rosemary and Mari-golds,

## Culpeper's last Legacies,

golds, of each two drams ; of the roots of *Petasitis* and *Zedoary*, of each three drams ; of the roots of *Scorzonera* one ounce, boil them all in a bottle of water to a quart, adding toward the end of the decoction, of *Saffron* and *Chochaneal*, of each ten grains ; strain it, and add to the decoction Syrup of *Violets*, *Clove-gilly-flowers*, and *Melissaphylli Fernelii*, of each an ounce, Oyl of *Sulphur* twelve drops ; let him drink a draught of it so often as he is a-dry.

**Clyster.** If he be astringent, keep his body soluble with Clysters.

**Cordial.** Refresh and strengthen him with Cordials, such be *Confectio de Hyacinthe*, *Confectio Alchermes*, *Electuarium de Ovo*, *species Cordiales temperata*, *Trochisci Galli Moschata*, *Magisterium Perlarum & Corallarum*, *Pulvis Gasconie*, *Bezoar orient* ; these or any of these, *consideratis considerandis*.

**Sleep.** Provoke him to sleep with *Diascordium*, if he sleep not ; but have a care of *Opiates* in the beginning of the Disease.

If he vomit much (as some vomit up all they do eat and drink) stay it with *Spiritus menthae*.

**For ri-  
ngs.** If swelling arise, consider first whether it be likely to break, or not, that you may know ; if it lie deep in the flesh, and look white, it is not likely to break ; you must then annoint it with Oil of *Lillie* or *Chamomell*.

If it rise to a head, look red, and lie not deep, it will break ; then take a young Pigeon, pull off the feathers from his tail, and hold her bare fundament to the swelling, and it will draw out the venome.

**Venice-  
Treacle  
attract-  
ive.** Some lay *Venice-Treacle* to it, and with good success ; for *Venice-Treacle* draweth the poyson to



to it, and doth not cast it from it, as some Physicians ignorantly affirm; for proof of which consider, that all hot things ~~are~~ are of an Attractive quality; Treacle is hot, therefore Attractive. All Purges draw the humour to them, and having gotten it together, nature casts it out; for Rhubarb, that purgeth Choler, is purely Cholerick it self, and therefore draws its like; so Venice-Treacle draws the venemous humour to it self, and having gotten it into the tunicle of the Stomack, or other place far from the Vitals, nature will deal well enough with it.

Secondly, if the Attractive faculty be hot and dry, then must all hot and dry things be Attractive; but the Attractive faculty is hot and dry. Arg. 2.

Thirdly, if the original of all heat be attractive, so are the Branches. Arg. 3.

But the original and root of all heat is attractive, as the Sun; so then are the Branches.

But enough (perhaps too much) of this.

Sometimes the swelling falls down again, and is black, and that comes through cold taken, and is a desperate sign; for you must be very careful of cold, in this disease.

But when it is too late to prevent, the remedy is presently to take a Pigeon, and with a sharp knife, cut her through the breast to the back; break her open, and apply her (yet alive) to the place.

If this do no good, apply a Cupping-glass to the place; for though this remedy be desperate, yet I have known it save a mans life.

When the sore is broken, apply a Melilot-plaster to it, and tent it with *Linimentum Arcei*, and make no great haste to heal it up.

Lastly, if Tokens appear, (which by most ignorant

rant People is affirmed, and firmly believed to be an infallible sign of death; although I knew two living at this time, and four or five more, since the writing of this in London, that were full of them, and yet recovered) first, I will tell you what I knew my self; a young man was let blood after he had the Tokens upon him, whereby part of the corrupted blood was let out, and the rest cooled, and he lived above a fortnight after, and then dyed; his Father denying to let him have any Physick in all that time, because he said he was marked for Death; whereas Cordials, and nourishing Diets might happily have preserved his life.

Another remedy for those that have Tokens, is something more desperate, which is this; whilst natural heat remains, wrap him up naked in a blanket wet in cold water; and that will set him in a most violent sweat, and purge out the corruption from the blood.

*Venitque Sa'utifer Orbi.*

NICH. CULPEPER.

---

COMPOSITA:  
OR, A  
SYNOPSIS  
OF THE  
Chieftest COMPOSITIONS  
Now in use with our Physicians, both  
CHYMIST & GALENIST.

Being the second Part of the Physical and Chyrurgical Remains, commonly called, *The Last Legacy*.

---

COLLECTED BY  
NICHOLAS CULPEPER,  
Student in Astrology and Physick.

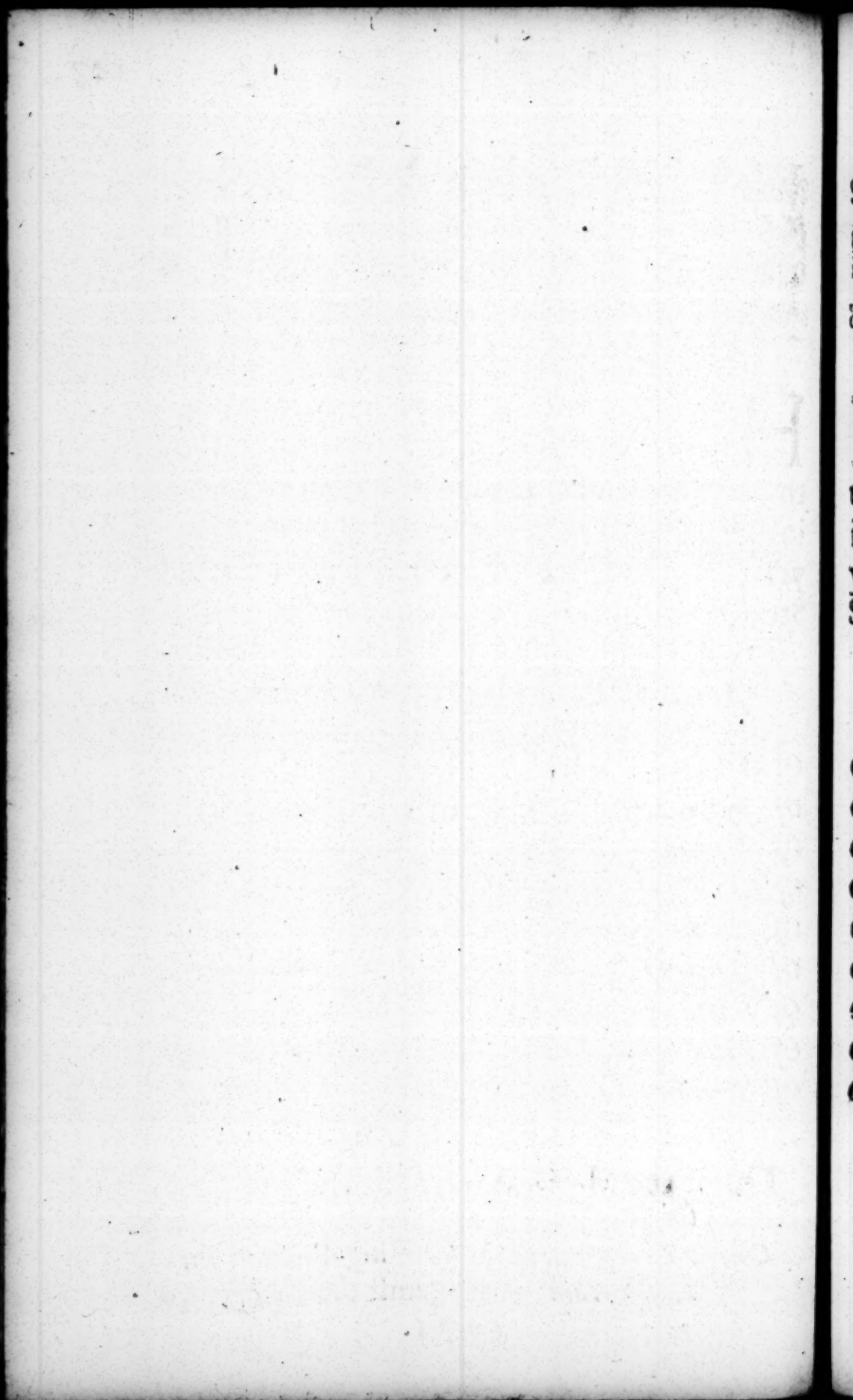
---

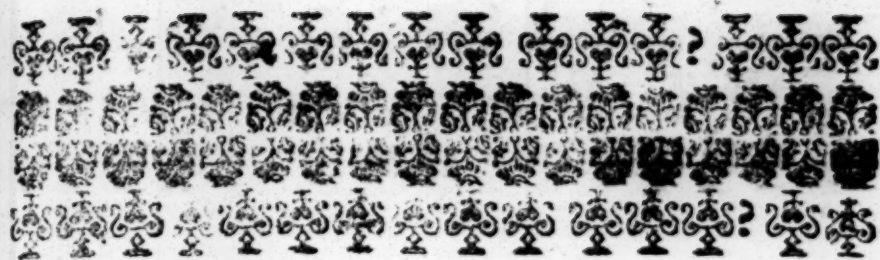


---

LONDON,  
Printed for *Nath. Brooke* at the Angel in Cornhil, and  
*Obadiah Blagrove* at the Printing-Prefs in Little-Brittain, over against the Pump,  
1671.







**H**AVING not long since drawn a Synopsis of Simples, I intend now to do the like by the most usual Compounds now in use; which if it serve for no other use, yet it will be a good Preparative to other Studies of greater consequence.

In this I shall observe this order.

Of Waters	Chap. 1.
Of Syrups	2.
Of Wines	3.
Of Oyls	4.
Of Electuaries	5.
Of Conerves	6.
Of Salts	7.
Of Pills	8.
Of Traches	9.

This is the Method, now to the Matter.

CHAP.



## CHAP. I.

*Of WATERS.*

Waters either { Alter.  
Purge.

By altering they { cool { Blood.  
Choler.  
heat { Flegm.  
Melancholy.

Cool the Blood over-heated, as waters of { Lettuce.  
Purslain.  
Water-Lillies.  
Violets.  
Sorrel.  
Succory.  
Fumitory.  
Endive.



Cools Choler in the	Head	{ Night-shade. { Lettuce. { Water-Lillies. { Poppies.
	Breast	{ Violets. { Poppies. { Colts-foot.
	Heart	{ Sorrel. { Quinces. { Water-Lillies. { Roses. { Violets. { Bark of Walnuts.
	Stomach	{ Quinces. { Gourds. { Roses. { Violets.
		{ Night-shades. { Sengreen, { Or { Houfleeck.

	Liver	{ Endive. Succory. Night-shade. Purslain. Water-Lillies.
Cools Choler in the	Reins and Bladder	{ Endive. Winter-Cherics, Plantane. Water-Lillies, Melons. Gourds. Citruls. Strawberries. Sengreen. Grasse. Black-Cherics.
	Matrix	{ Endive. Lettuce. Water-Lillies. Purslain. Roses.

Head

Heat Flegm in the	Head	{	Betony.
		{	Sage.
		{	Margerome.
		{	Camomel.
		{	Fennel.
		{	Calaminth.
		{	Lillies of the Valley.
	Breast	{	Rosemary-flowers.
		{	Primroses.
		{	Eyebright.
		{	Maidenhair.
		{	Betony.
		{	Hyfop.
		{	Horehound.
		{	Carduus.
	Stomach	{	Orris.
		{	Scabious.
		{	Bawm.
{		Tobacco.	
{		Self-heal.	
{		Comfry.	
		{	Wormwood.
		{	Mints.
		{	Fennel.
		{	Cinamon
		{	Mother of Thyme.
		{	Marigolds.



Heat Flegm in the	Heart	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cinamon.</li> <li>Bawm.</li> <li>Rosemary.</li> </ul>
	Liver	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Centaury the less.</li> <li>Wormwood.</li> <li>Origanum.</li> <li>Agrimony.</li> <li>Fennel.</li> </ul>
	Spleen	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Birthwort.</li> <li>Water-creffes.</li> <li>Wormwood.</li> <li>Calaminth.</li> <li>Gentian.</li> </ul>
	Reins and Bladder	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Rocket. Nettles.</li> <li>Saxifrage.</li> <li>Rhaddish.</li> <li>Pellitory of the wall.</li> <li>Cinkfoyle.</li> <li>Burnet.</li> <li>Elicampane.</li> </ul>
	Matrix	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mugwort.</li> <li>Savin.</li> <li>enn royal.</li> <li>Calaminth.</li> <li>Lovage.</li> </ul>

Head

## Part II. his Physical, Chyrurgical Remains.

133

	Head	{ Hops. Fumitory.
	Breast	{ Bawm. Carduus.
Heat Melancholy in the	Heart	{ Borrage. Bugloss. Bawm. Rosemary.
	Liver	{ Cichory. Fumitory. Hops. Afarabacca.
	Spleen	{ Doddar. Harts tongue. Tamaris. Thyme.

## CHAP. II.

## Of SYRUPS.

Syrups	{ Concoct <i>vide</i> Pag. seq.		{	Roses.
				Violets.
	{ Choler	{		Peach-flowers.
				Cichory with Rhubarb.
	{ Purge	{ Flegm	{	Briony.
				Hermodactils.
				Oximel.
				Julianizans.
				Oximel.
				Helleboratum.
{	{ Mixt humours	{	Dysafercos.	
			Diacnicu.	



		{	Water-Lillies.
	Head	}	Poppies.
		{	Violets.
	Breast	}	Jujubes.
		}	Juice of Pomegranates.
		{	Vinegar.
		{	Pomegranates.
		{	Sour Grapes.
		{	Roses.
		{	Quinces.
		{	Mirtles.
		{	Sorrel.
		{	Wood-Sorrel.
		{	Juice of Oranges.
		{	Lemmons and Citrons.
		{	Endive.
	Liver	}	Succory.

Syrups  
concoct  
Choler  
in the

Syrups conco- cting Flegm.	Head	{ Betony. { Stœchas.
	Breast	{ Hyfop. { Horehound. { Maidenhair. { Coltsfoot. { Scabious. { Betony. { Liquoris.
	Heart	{ Bizantinus. { Bawm:
	Stomach	{ Wormwood. { Mints. { Oximel. { Simplex, Com- { pounds & Scil- { liticum.
	Liver	{ Of the open- { ing roots. { Agrimony.
	Matrix	{ Mugwort. { Calaminth.

		Juice of Apples.
		Borage and Bugloss.
Melan- choly in the	Heart	Citron-Pills.
		Bawm.
	Liver and Spleen	Epithimum. Hops. Fumitory.

---

CHAP. III.

of WINES.

Wines	{	Concoct.
		Purge.

Wines



Wines concoct according } Place.  
 } Property.

According to place, Wines heat the	Head	{ Betony. Sage. Rosemary. Fennel. Stœchus. Eye-bright.
	Heart	{ Borrage. Bugloss. Bawm. Hippocras.
	Stomach	{ Wormwood. Black-Cheries. Hippocras.
	Liver and Spleen.	{ Germander. Tamaris.
	Reins and Bladder	{ Winter-cherries. Sage.

In pro-  
perty  
they

{ binde } Quinces.  
          { pears.  
          { Roses.

{ provoke sweat } Guaiacum.

{ resist poyson } Zedoary.  
                      { Angelica.

{ Flegm } Vinum scilliticum.  
          { Acetum scilliticum

Purge { Choler } Rhubarb.

      { Melancholy } Black Hellebore.

{ Water } Spurge.  
          { Walwort.

## CHAP. IV.

## of OYLES.

Oyles are chiefly for an external use, and  
 so they alter according { quality,  
 to { property.

In their quality they are { hot,  
 { cold.

		Mint.
		Wormwood.
	{ Stomach	Mastick.
		Spikenard.
		Bitter Almonds.
		Wormwood.
	{ Liver	Spikenard.
		Mastick.
Oils heat-		
ing the		
		Capers.
	{ Spleen	Spike.
		Spikenard.
	{ Joynts	Rue. Nuts.
		Nutmegs.

Heat



Heat the Nerves, as Oyle of	{	Pepper. Mastich.
	{	Euphorbium.
	{	Elicampane.
	{	Earth-worms.
	{	Marjoram.
	{	Costmary.
	{	Lovage.

{	Stomach	{	Quinces.
		{	Mirtles.
		{	Roses.

{	Breast	{	Violets.
		{	Water-Lillies.

{	Liver	{	Violets.
		{	Water-Lillies.

{	Reins	{	Lettuce.
		{	Water-Lillies.

{	Womb	{	Quince.
		{	Water-Lillies.
		{	Mirtles.
		{	Gourds.

Oyles heating the Head, are of	{	Rosemary.
	{	Betony.
	{	Vervain.

Oyles

Oyls cooling the head, are of {

 Fleabane.  
 Poppies.  
 Mandrakes

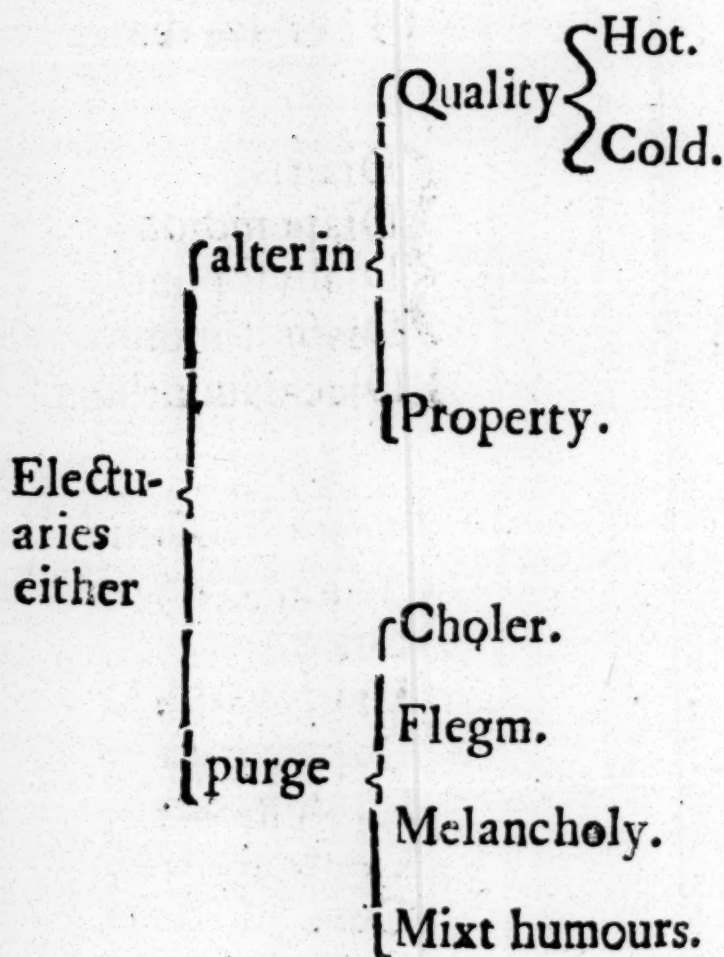
Oyls altering in property.

	Binde	<span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> Wormwood. Mints. Mastich. Mirtles.
	Mollifie	<span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> Linseed. Storax.
	Loosen	<span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> Sweet Almonds. Sallet-Oyle.
So they	Rarifie	<span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> Dill. Camomel.
	Digest	<span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> Bitter Almonds. Nuts. Rew.
	Cleanse	<span style="font-size: 2em; vertical-align: middle;">{</span> Myrthe. Tartar. Wheat Eggs Elder Rhadishes

	Glutinate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Myrrhe</li> <li>Tobacco</li> <li>Balsom</li> <li>Maudlin</li> </ul>
	Provoke sleep	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mandragus</li> <li>Poppy</li> <li>Henbane</li> <li>Water-Lillies</li> </ul>
In pro- perty they	Break the Stone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Citron-seeds</li> <li>Scorpions</li> <li>Cherry-Kernels</li> </ul>
	Provoke Lust	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Emmets</li> <li>Fistick-Nuts</li> </ul>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Elder</li> <li>Wall-flowers</li> <li>Camomel</li> <li>Dill</li> </ul>
	Ease pain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>White-Lilies</li> <li>Bay</li> <li>St. Johnswort</li> <li>Populeon</li> <li>Foxes</li> <li>Dwarf-Elder.</li> </ul>



CHAP. V.  
 of ELECTUARIES.



Electu-

Electua-  
ries  
heating  
the

Head

Confectio anacar-  
dina.  
Diamoschum.  
Diambra.  
Diacorum.  
Diapionias.  
Pleres Arcoticon.  
Theriaca diates.

Breast

Diairis.  
Diapenidion.  
Diahyssopum.  
Diaprasinum.  
Diacalaminthum.

Heart

Arom. Rosatum.  
Arom. Caryophyl.  
Dianthon.  
Diaxyloaloes.  
Diamargariton.  
El. de gemmis.  
Lætificans Gal.  
Conf. Alkerm.  
Conf. Liberantis.  
Pler. Arcoticon.

L

Electu-

Electua-  
ries heat-  
ing the

{ Stomach

{ Arom: Rosatum.  
Diagalanga.  
Dianysum.  
Diacymnum.  
Diacinnamonum.  
Diagingiber.  
Diaspoliticon.  
Diatrion piperion  
El. é baccis lauri.  
Rosata novella.

{ Liver

{ Dialacca.  
Diacurcuma.  
Diacalaminthes.  
Diacinnamonum.

{ Spleen

{ Diacapparais.  
Diacostum.  
Diacalaminthum.  
El. é scoria ferri.

{ Matrix

{ Diambra.  
Diacalaminthum.  
El. é gemmis.  
El. ex Asia foetida.

Cool



{ Head } Diacodion.

Breast { Diapapaver.  
Diatragacanthum  
frigidum, & re-  
sumptivum.

Cool the { Heart { Diarrohodon. Abb.  
Diatrion sanct.  
Diamarg. frig.  
Conf. de Hyacin-  
tho.

Liver { Trianfatum.  
Spleen {  
Matrix {  
Joynts { Diarrhodon. Abb.

In proper-ty { Bind { Diacodion.  
Micleta  
Tryphera minor.

Break the { El. Reginae.  
Stone { Lilliontribon.  
Decineribus.

In pro- perty	{ provoke lust	{ Diasatyron. Diacorum. Tryphera Sara- cem.
	{ resist poy son	{ El. de ovo. Mithridate. Treacle. Antidotus Matthioli. Athanasia.

Purge	{ Gently	{ Cassia { with Senna without
		{ Diacatholicon. Diaprunum sim- plex.
	{ Strongly, see pag. seq.	{ El. lenitivum.

Purge

Choler } El. e succo Rosarum.  
 } Diaprunum.  
 } Solutivum.

Benedict. Laxativum.  
 Diaphœnicum.  
 Indum Elect.  
 Diatur- } Majus.  
 Flegm } bith } Minus.  
 } Hierapicra simp.  
 } Hieracum agar.  
 } Hierapachii.  
 } Hieradiacolocynth.

Purge  
 strong-  
 ly

Melan- } Confectio Ha-  
 choly } mech.  
 } Hieralogodium

Mixt } Diacarthamum.  
 humours. } Diaturbith cum  
 } Rhubarb.



## CHAP. VI.

## Of CONSERVES.

Conserve heating the	Head	{ Rosemary-flowers. Betony.	
		{ Eyebright, Sage- flowers, Laven- der-flowers.	
		{ Marjoram. Peony.	
	Breast	{ Hyssop. Bawm.	
		{ Maidenhair.	
	Heart	{ Borrage.	
		{ Bugloss } flow-	
		{ Rosemary } ers.	
		{ Bawm.	
		{ Clove-Gilliflowers.	
	Stomac.	{ Wormwood.	
		{ Elecampane.	
		{ Mints.	
	Spleen	{ Cetrarch.	
		{ Fumitory.	
	Liver	{ Wormwood.	
		{ Fumitory.	
		{ Elder-flowers.	

Con- serves heat- ing the	Womb	{ Marjoram. Bawm. Rosemary-flowers.
	Joynts	{ Stœchas. Rosemary-flowers.
Con- serves cool- ing the	Head	{ Water-Lillies. Roses. Violets.
	Breast	{ Violets.
	Heart	{ Sorrel. Wood-sorrel. Roses. Violets.
	Stomach	{ Roses. Violets.
	Liver	{ Endive: Succory. Roses. Violets.
	Spleen Reins Womb Joynts	{ Roses. Violets.

## CHAP. VII.

## of S A L T S.

Salts purge by	{	Coughing	{	St. Johns-wort.
			{	Polypodium.
	{	Urine	{	Camomel.
			{	Wormwood.
			{	Gentian.
			{	Restharrow.
			{	Broom.
			{	Bean-cods.
	{	The Womb	{	Mugwort.
			{	Bawm.
			{	Chelandine.
	{	Sweat	{	Guaiacum:
Salts ease pain, as of	{	Mans Stags Goats	{	blood.

Cleanse,



Cleanse, as salt of {  
 Urine.  
 Honey.  
 Vinegar.

## CHAP. VIII.

## Of PILLS.

{ Bind, as Pills of Bdellium.

Ease pain, as Pills of {  
 Opium.  
 Laudanum.  
 é Styrace.  
 é Cynoglossa.  
 Scribonii.

The Pills I  
 here treat  
 of, either

{ or Purge.

Pills

Pills purge	{ Choler	{ from the	{ Aureæ.
		{ Head, as	{ Arabicæ.
	{	{ from the	{ Rhubarb.
		{ Liver	{ Agrimony.
	{	{ from the	{ Cochiæ.
		{ Head	{ Hiera cum
			{ Agarico.
			{ Alhandal.
	{	{ from the	{ Agarick.
		{ Breast	{ Hiera cum
		{ Agarico.	
{ Flegm	{ from the	{ Alephangin.	
	{ Stomach	{ Mastick.	
		{ Stomachicæ.	
		{ Ruffi.	
{	{ from the	{ Hermodactils.	
	{ Joynts.	{ Arthriticæ.	
		{ Fœtidæ.	
		{ Sagapenum.	
		{ Opopanax.	
	{ Sarcocolla.		

Melancholy from { Fumitory.  
 the Liver and { Indi.  
 Spleen { Lapis Lazuli.

Pills purge

Mixt hu- mours	Head	{ Sine quibus esse Nolo. { Lucis Majores. Cochiaz.
	Stomach	{ Afflaireth. { Turbith. { Imperial. Ruffi.
	Liver.	{ De tribus. { Alkekengi.
	All parts	{ Aggregative.

CHAP.



CHAP. XI.

Of TROCHES.

Alter, vid. pag. sequ.

Troches {

Choler { Rhubarb.

Purge {

Flegm { De Agarico.

Agaricus.

Trochiscatus,

Alhandal de

Scilla.

Troches alter according to { Quality.

{ Property.

In qua-  
lity  
they  
are

Hot, as of { Lignum Aloes.  
Saffron.  
Crocomagma.

Cold, as of { Spodium.  
Diasantaloon.  
Camphyre.

Bind, as { Earth of Lemnos.  
Amber.  
Barberies.  
Spodium.  
Coral.

In pro-  
perty  
they

Soften, as of { Capers.

Bitter Almonds.  
Hepatici.  
Wormwood.  
Roses.

Open { Albi.  
Bechi { Nigri.  
De Lacca.  
Alkekengi.  
Egrimony.

		Aliptæ Moscha- tæ.
	Open	Myrrhe. Anniseed. Rhubarb.
	Cleanse, as	Cyphios,
In proper- ty these	Resist poyson	De Vipera. Ramich. Hedisteroi. Gallia- Muscata. Diarrhodon.
	Ease pain	Diarrhodon. Diaspermaton. Camphyre.

# APHORISMS

Exceeding requisite for such as intend the  
Noble (though too much abused) Practice

OF

# PHYSICK.

*Containing the Quality of Medicines.*

---

## PART III.

---

COLLECTED BY  
NICHOLAS CULPEPER, *Gent.*  
Student in Astrology and Physick.

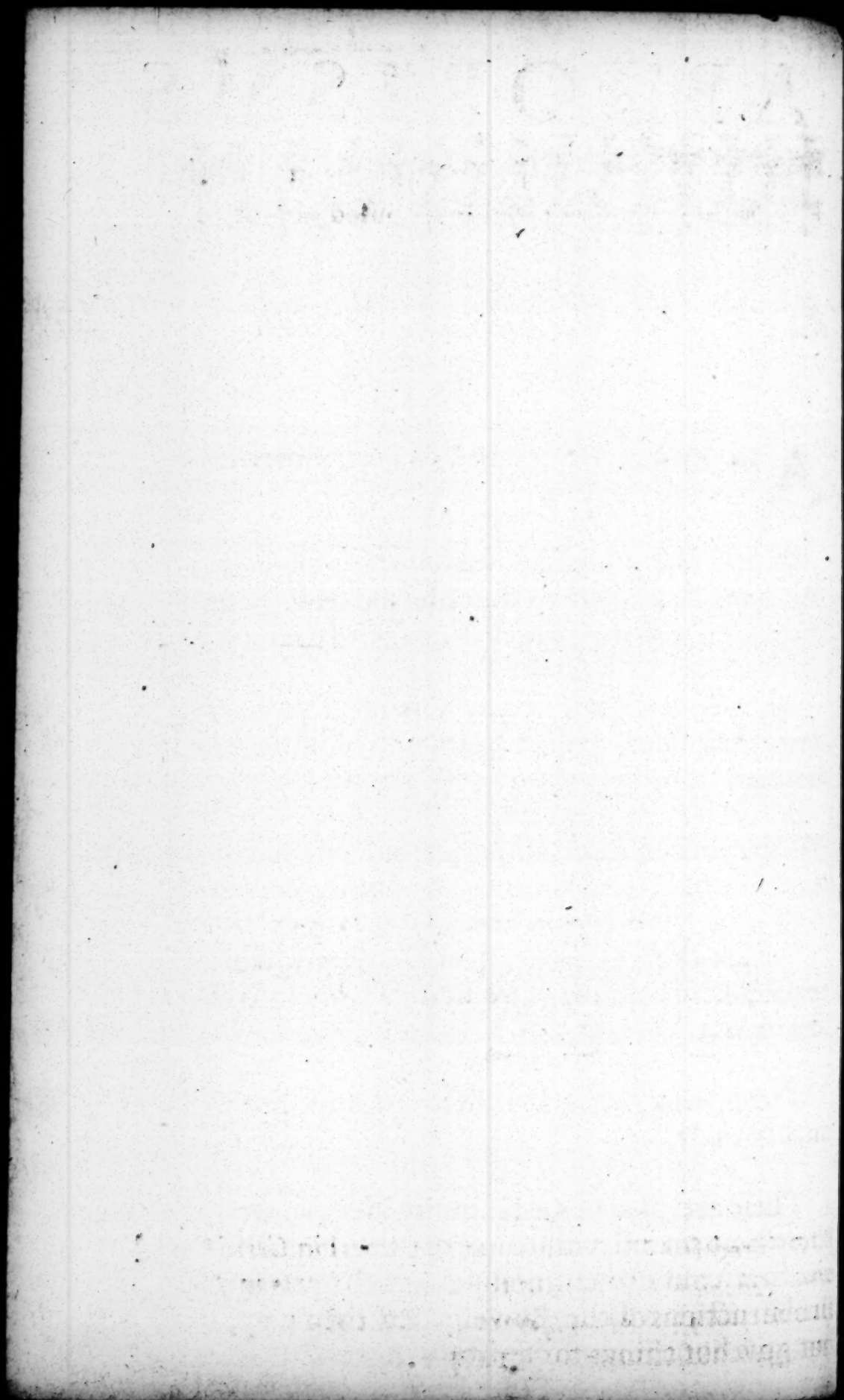
---



---

L O N D O N,  
Printed for Nath. Brooke at the Angel in Cornhill, and  
Obadiah Blagrave at the Printing-Press in Little-Brittain, over against the Pump,  
1671.







# A P H O R I S M S.

## I.

**A**LL Medicines operate by a way, either manifest or hidden.

## II.

We call that a manifest way which is obvious to the senses, (especially to the taste and feeling) but that an hidden way which is obvious to no sense.

## III.

All Medicines working by a manifest way, perform their office, by heat or cold, moistning or drying.

## IV.

Neither is there any Simple so temperate, but one of these doth in one measure or another prevail.

## V.

Yet are those usually called [*Temperate,*] which Medicines excell not in cold, moisture, heat, or driness to the temperate first degree.

## VI.

These being put in any Medicine, alter not the quality of it.

## VII.

These are used in such infirmities, in which there is no manifest distemper of the first qualities, viz. heat, cold, driness, moisture; as for example; in obstructions of the Bowels; for then we dare not give hot things for fear of a fever.

Also in such feavers where the effect is hot and dry, the cause cold and moist, that so we may neither increase in the feaver, nor make the flegm thick by cold.

## IX.

Things contrary are taken away by their contraries; things like, are preserved by their like.

## X.

The degrees of intemperature were observed, that so the part of the body afflicted might be brought to its proper temper, and no further; for if a Physician should give a thing extremely cold in a disease but meanly hot, he might soon cure that, and bring a worse in its room.

## XI.

Hot in  
the first  
degree.

These things are said to be hot in the first degree, which do only cherish natural heat, or restore it being lost, and that without any hurt at all to the body: chilliness of the body, and pains coming by such distempers, are remedied this way.

## XII.

These also are sometimes given not only in cold but also in hot affections.

## XIII.

For it looseth and discusseth thick humours, that are compacted together by its gentle heat, opening the pores, and causeth sweating.

## XIV.

Amongst these, such are chiefly to be used which are most friendly to our bodies, viz. suitable to our complexions.

## XV.

Such are called Anodynes, or easers of pain.

XVI.

Also take notice, that such Medicines, whether Simple or Compound, that are hot and moist, cannot excell their due moderation of heat.

XVII.

Such also take away weariness, open the Pores, and consume the superfluous Vapours in Feavers.

XVIII.

Yet may a foolish use of these bring inconveniences, even to the consumption of the vital spirits, as happens many times in Inflammations of the bowels, &c.

XIX.

This usually happens by applying such a Medicine as is not appropriated to that part of the body it is applied to, *puta* the applying a Cephalick Medicine to the bowels.

XX.

Such things are said to be hot in the second degree, whose heat is greater than the natural heat of our bodies; besides, their heat offends the palat. Hot in the 2d. degree.

XXI.

Their use is for such whose stomach is offended by flegm, to heat and dry them.

XXII.

They open obstructions, and the pores of the skin, not gently, and by perswasion, or fair words, as it were, but by threatning.

XXIII.

Their common use is, to cut and discuss tough thick viscous humours.

XXIV.

Such as are hot in the third degree, work therein the same effects more violently, for they open Obstructions by violence and fine force. third degree.



## XXV.

The heat of these are so great, that many times they stir up Feavers.

## XXVI.

Their use is, to divide stubborn and compacted humours, and provoke sweat; whence it comes to pass, that most of them resist poyson.

## XXVII.

In the  
fourth  
degree.

Lastly, those obtain the fourth and last degree of heat, which burn and raise Blisters on the body being outwardly applied.

## XXVIII.

I am of opinion, that these ought not to be taken inwardly, but with great discretion, and in urgent necessities.

## XXIX.

It is in vain to urge the common taking of Onions, Garlick, &c. against this a man may (if he please) so accustom his body to poyson, that for present it may not poyson him, though for present it bring his body to great inconveniences, and make way for future diseases.

## XXX.

Medicines  
cold in  
the first  
degree.

Also Physicians have allotted to cold Medicines, four degrees of coldness.

## XXXI.

Amongst which, those obtain the first degree which are but lightly and gently cold.

## XXXII.

Not *per se*,  
although  
*per acci-*  
*dens.*

Yet because we live and are cherished by heat, no cold thing is properly friendly to our natures.

## XXXIII.

Their use is not only to cool the heat of diet, and bring it to a grateful temper; but also to

repress

repress the unbridled heat of the body, as internal inflammation, Feavers, &c.

XXXIV.

In such occasions, let such as are cold in the first degree, be administred to Children, and such as have weak natures; as also such whose bodies are little distempered with heat.

XXXV.

Such bodies as are stronger, or whose Livers Cold in are hotter, may use such things as are cold in the second degree.

XXXVI.

If the body be very strong, the stomach and liver very hot, such with due moderation may use Medicines cold in the third degree.

XXXVII.

Such as are cold in the fourth degree, are not inwardly to be taken without diligent correction and urgent necessity.

XXXVIII.

Outwardly they are used to take away inflammations; which if they be not great things, less cold will serve the turn.

XXXIX.

Every remedy ought to be proportioned according to the just quality of the disease.

XL.

Sometimes the spirits of man are troubled by heat, and in such diseases immoderate watching follows; neither is there any other way left to help such, but cooling Medicines.

XLI.

Cold naturally stops the Pores, congeals the humours, stops sweat, stays motion; and by this means it sometimes so stops the passage of the

spirits, that it consumes the strength both of the heart and bowels.

## XLII.

When you read this, you will see then what care, wisdom, skill, and diligence is requisite to a Physician.

## XLIII.

The greatest use of things extreamly cold, is to ease pains, when neither Emollients, Lenitives nor Anodynes will do it.

## XLIV.

For things cold in the fourth degree, stupifie the senses, thereby allaying that pain which might else produce a fever, and the fever death, before the disease or malady afflicting can be cured in a rational way.

## XLV.

I have now done with the active qualities, *viz.* heat and cold; and come to the passive, *viz.* dryness and moisture.

## XLVI.

Of Medi- No moist Medicines can arrive so high as the  
cines fourth degree.  
moist-  
ning.

## XLVII.

For seeing all things either heat or cool, things hot are drying, things cold congeal, both are enemies to moisture.

## XLVIII.

Yet have moist things their operation also, for they are lenitive, and make slippery.

## XLIX.

In the 1st Things moist in the first degree, mitigate  
degree. coughs, and help the roughness of the wind-pipe.

## L.

In the se- Such as are moist in the second degree, weaken  
cond. natural strength.



L I.

They loosen the belly, and make the blood and spirits thick, & by consequence the wit dull.

L II.

But if they exceed this degree, they cause the humours to putrifie, and make the body unfit for any action, open a gate to Dropsies, Lethargies, and other diseases of like nature. In the third.

L III.

Medicines which are drying, have a contrary operation to these. Of drying Medicines.

L I V.

They consume humours, stop fluxes, and make the parts of the body tenacious, and strengthen the actions of Nature.

L V.

Yet although drying Medicines strengthen Nature, by consuming the offending humidity; yet by unskilful use, they prove many times destructive.

L V I.

There is humidity required to cherish the spirits; which if it be consumed, they cannot perform their actions; of which if they fail, they also consume natural strength.

L V II.

This is done by unwise, or unskilful administering things dry in the second degree. In the second degree.

L V III.

Things dry in the third degree, are subject to spoil the nourishment, and bring consumptions. In the third.

L I X.

Thence we may gather, that want of moisture to digest ones meat, causeth consumptions.



## L X.

In the  
fourth  
Part

Besides this, there is a humidity in the Body, called *Radical Moisture*; which being taken away, Man must needs perish: and this is consumed by things dry in the fourth degree.

## L X I.

This, although it come but as an effect of heat, yet it doth it by drying properly, and not by heating.

## L X I I.

And this shall suffice briefly to have spoken of the Qualities of Phÿsick, as it is hot, cold, dry, or moist.

---

SELECT

---

III.

dy,  
ay,  
by

at,  
by

of  
or

T

SELECT  
APHORISMS

Concerning the  
Operation of Medicines, according to the Place in the Body of frail Man.

---

PART IV.

---

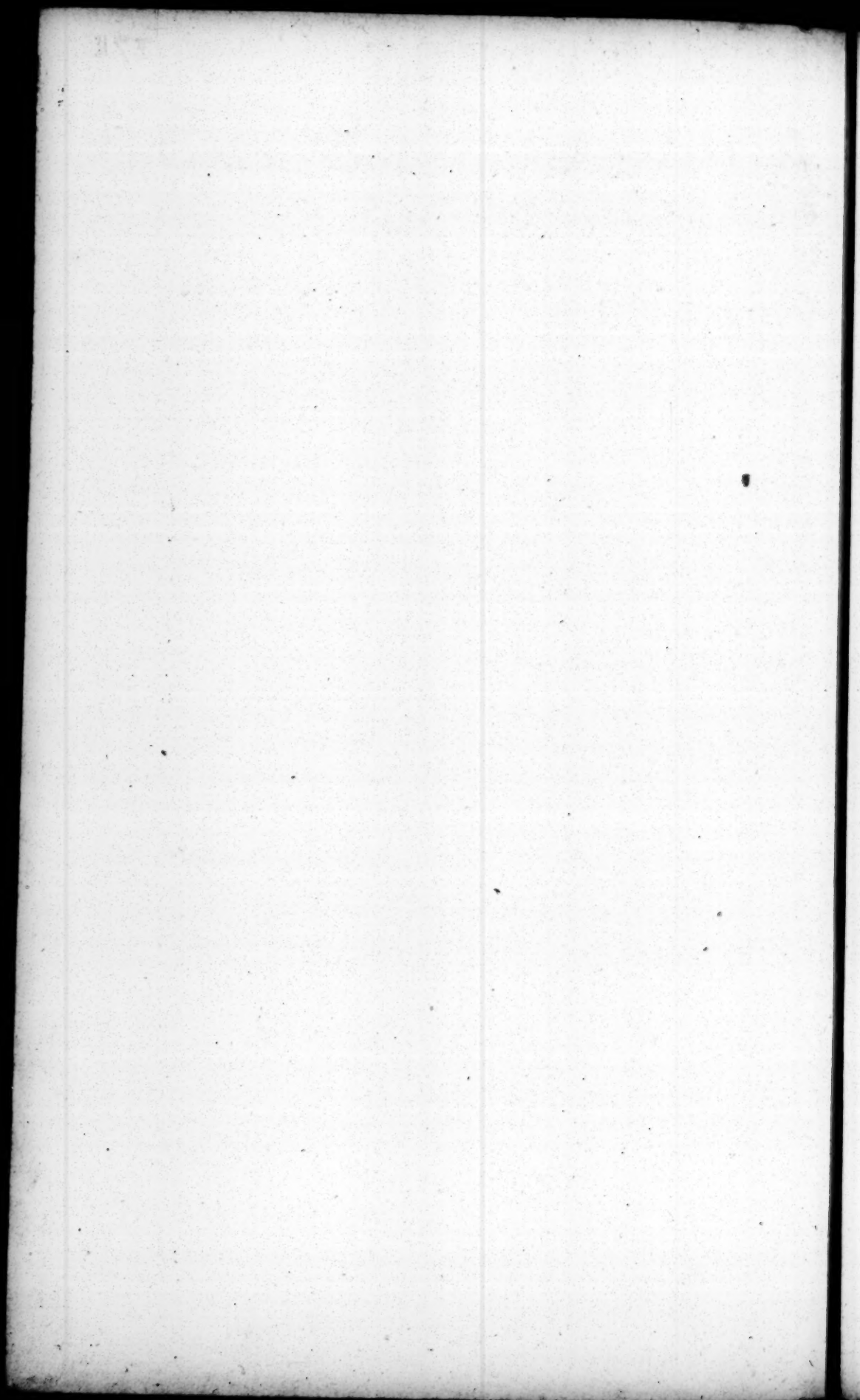
COLLECTED BY  
NICHOLAS CULPEPER, *Gent.*  
Student in Astrology and Physick.

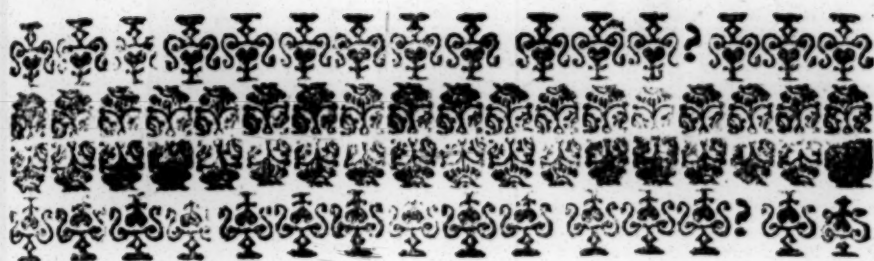
---



---

LONDON,  
Printed for *Nath. Brooke* at the Angel in Cornhil, and  
*Obadiah Blagrove* at the Printing-Prefs in Little-Brittain, over against the Pump,  
1671.





**I** Shall bluntly set about the business ; and yet not so rudely neither, but I shall observe order, and divide the whole business into these Chapters.

<i>Of Cephalicks</i>	—————	Chap. 1.
<i>Of Pectorals</i>	—————	2.
<i>Of Cordials</i>	—————	3.
<i>Of Stomachicals</i>	—————	4.
<i>Of Hepaticals</i>	—————	5.
<i>Of Splenicals</i>	—————	6.
<i>Of Renals and Vesicals</i>	—————	7.
<i>Of Hystericals</i>	—————	8.
<i>Of Arthriticals</i>	—————	9.
<i>Of Purges.</i>	—————	10.

This I intend shall be the order.

**CHAP.**





PART I.  
Of CEPHALICKS.

PART I.

---

I.

**I**N treating of Cephalicks, I must be forced to make some distinction.

II.

**What the head is.** That is properly called the Head, which is between the top of the crown, and the *vertebræ* of the neck.

III.

**What Cephalicks are.** Such Medicaments as are accommodated to diseases of the brain, are properly called Cephalicks, and shall be the basis of our discourse in this first part. The other take denomination from the parts they are appropriated to : of which more anon.

IV.

Of Cephalicks, some are hot, some cold, whereby they remedy the affects of the brain by a manifest way.

V.

**The Brain is temperate.** For the Brain, seeing it is the seat of Reason, the rise of the Senses, the original of the Nerves, is by its own nature temperate.

VI.

## V I.

Therefore it is sooner afflicted than any other parts of the body; for if it be but a little too hot, Sense and Reason is suddenly and inordinately moved; if but a little too cold, they languish and are stupified. Its afflic-  
tions.

## V I I.

So then it appears, that the Brain of Man is most subject to infirmities.

## V I I I.

Besides, this is peculiar to the Brain, that it is delighted or offended with smells, sounds, and colours, which the other parts of the body want.

## I X.

The Womb also doth somewhat partake of this property; for it manifestly flies from stinking things, and embraceth sweet: but of this more in its proper place.

## X.

Those things therefore may be accounted Cephalicks, which refresh the Brain by sweet scents, pleasing harmony, or delightful sights. Smells,  
Musick,  
Sights are  
Cephalical.

## X I.

And yet the Physicians account only smells of these to be Cephalical; I suppose because they affect the Brain by a more inbred quality; the other two are objects more properly of the judgment, viz. by Harmony and Aspect.

## X I I.

(Hence it is clear, that the Sense of Smelling is more terrene, than that either of Seeing or Hearing.)

## X I I I.

Or it may be, because they think Musick or pleasant Sights are not Medicines; but the vul-

gar Proverb might have taught them otherwise,

*Musica mentis, Medicina mæstæ :*

Musick was held of old a Physick kind  
For a dejected melancholy mind.

## XIV.

How Cephalicks may be known.

Also Cephalicks may be known from the effects of the Brain themselves.

## XV.

\* Astrology may reveal this hidden mystery.

Therefore because the Brain is usually offended with Flegm, therefore those things may be accounted Cephalicks, which (besides a \* hidden faculty wherby they strengthen the Brain) warm, cleanse, cut, and dry.

## XVI.

Besides, if you consider the situation of the Brain, viz. in the superior part of all the body, you may conceive it very apt to receive hot vapours.

## XVII.

These afflict men with Watchings, and Head-ach, these must be restrained by cooling Cephalicks.

## XVIII.

Only I would have this general Maxim observed, that Opiates, and other soporiferous Medicines, universally do the Brain more harm than good.

## XIX.

Such Medicines as purge the head; I shall omit to treat of here, even until I come to the last Chapter, which treats of Purges.

## XX.

Besides, such Medicines as dry, heat, cool, or purge the head; there are certain other Medicines familiar to the brain, which may be called proper helps, the former being but accidental.



XXI.

These work (say the Physitians) by a hidden quality, and no reason can be given for their operation.

XXII.

These by a peculiar instinct or providence, defend the brain against particular diseases, one against one disease, another against another; by a certain harmony with the brain, and by a certain antipathy they have against those diseases, they fortifie and defend the brain against them.

XXIII.

You see hence what ignorant Physitians those <sup>Theigno-</sup> of our times are, who being ignorant of Astrology <sup>rance of</sup> cannot give a reason of the Physick they pre- <sup>Physiti-</sup> scribe: a Parrot may be taught to be as learned <sup>ans.</sup> in prescriptions.

XXIV.

I trust I shall shortly have a Treatise ready called *Cephalica Simplicia*, which will furnish you with Simples appropriated to every disease in the head, and give you the reasons of them too.

XXV.

Seeing then the operations of Cephalicks are <sup>The time</sup> divers, the time of using them cannot be one and <sup>of using.</sup> the same.

XXVI.

If the brain be afflicted, it cannot be strengthened, except it be first purged.

XXVII.

If it be purged, it must be purged with Cephalicks.

XXVIII.

Neither can it be purged with Cephalicks, before the whole body be evacuated; for otherwise it will soon be filled with vapours.

XXIX.



XXIX.

Cool Cephalicks (they say) are dangerous near the Crifis.

XXX.

Laftly, the manner of the Cephalicks is various according to the variety of the Difcfe, the time of its ftanding, its fymptoms, and the feafon of the year.

PART II.

XXXI.

Under the name of the Head, as I told you before, are the external parts contained, *viz.* the Eyes, Ears, Noſe, &c. theſe ſhall occupy the ſecond parts of this Chapter.

XXXII.

Of the external Senſes, the Sight is the chief; the Organs of which are the Eyes.

XXXIII.

Medicines appropriated to the Eyes, are of two ſorts; ſuch as are appropriated to the viſive ſpirit, and ſuch as are appropriated to the Eyes themſelves.

XXXIV.

There ought to be that conſtitution of the ſpirits, that they may not be too thick nor too thin.

XXXV.

For many times it happens that the ſubtilty of the Spirits dulls the fight.

XXXVI.

The beſt Medicines for the eyes perform their office (as Phyſicians ſay) by a hidden quality.

XXXVII.

Uſually things are ſaid to help, that have affinity

with the things helped; yet such strong things are in the universal Providence, that they may even seem miraculous: I will instance in one.

XXXVIII.

A Goats Liver applied to the eyes, makes a man see very well in the night; and the reason is, because Goats see as well by night as by day.

XXXIX.

But what affinity is between these two, seeing they have neither the same substance, nor the same temperature? viz. the Goats Liver with the eyes. This then is strange.

XL.

It is most certain, and *Wicker* confesseth it, that Man hath learned many things of the Beasts, which the acuteness of his Reason could never reach to, nor experience teach him.

XLI.

To quote what Simples are appropriated to the eyes, is not my scope here, but to shew how to use them.

XLII.

As for the constitution of the eyes, seeing they are most exact in sense, so they will not lightly bear the least inconvenience; therefore every thing is not proper for the eyes which sharpens the sight by attenuating.

XLIII.

But even in external things you must have a special care that they be not too hot, nor too sharp, nor hurt by hardness, biting nor viscosity.

XLIV.

Oyl in it self is offensive to the eyes; and Oyntments, because they have Oyl in them.

## XLV.

The roughness of the Powders every one knows offends.

## XLVI.

Yet this must be taken in by the way, that it is one thing to strengthen the Eyes, and another thing to take away the matter that offends them.

## XLVII.

Nose and Mouth. Also to the Nose and Mouth, have a care you apply not stinking things to diseases of the Nose, or things of ingratelul taste to those of the Mouth.

## XLVIII.

Things ingratelul in taste, spoil not only the Palat, but subvert the Stomach, seeing the tunicle of the Mouth and Stomach is the same. Things ingratelul to the Nose, hurt the Brain as much.

## XLIX.

But seeing Mouth and Nose are the ways to purge the Brain, I shall let them alone till I am to speak of purging.

## L.

The Ears, because they are always open, are most subject to be infected with cold.

## LI

And because they are very dry in substance, they require Medicines which vehemently dry.

## LII.

Cold and vehement heat are inimical to the Teeth; but they are soonest hurt with sharp, sowre, and austere things.

## LIII.

The reason is, because they are neither covered with flesh nor skin, by which they might be defended from such injuries.

## LIV.

Things cleansing and binding are helpful to the Teeth, because every leight occasion pesters them with Defluxions; and for this reason, the use of sweet and fat things rots them.

---

## CHAP. II.

## Of PECTORALS.

## I.

**M**edicines appropriated to the Breast and Lungs, are not of one and the same kind: for some regard the parts themselves afflicted, others the matter afflicting.

## II.

For instance, sometimes the Lungs are ulcerated, and then we use such things as are glutinative and binding; yet are binding things naturally most adverse to the Breast & Lungs, both because they hinder respiration, and because they hinder the Breast from cleansing it self.

## III.

The Breast requires naturally Lenitives, both for the freer breathing, and removing those things which stick to it.

## IV.

The Lungs are very obnoxious to distillations from the head; therefore those especially are called Pectorals, which cause easie spitting.

## V.

But the manner of provoking spitting, is not always one and the same.



## VI.

Sometimes the matter is so thin, that it slips away, and cannot be expelled by the motion of the Breast. Sometimes so thick, that it cannot be cast out by the streight arteries of the Lungs.

## VII.

These then are genuine Principles, to make thick what is thin, and cut what is thick, that so they may the more easily be spit out.

## VIII.

Of thickning Pectorals, some are milder, which are appropriated to humours both hot and cold; others more vehement cold, to bridle the fastness of the Acrimony of the humour.

## IX.

Amongst Pectorals, it were worth the while to speak a word or two to things appropriated to Pthilicks.

## X.

There are three things requisite to such a Cure.

1. To cut & bring away the concreted blood.
2. To cherish and strengthen the Lungs.
3. To conglutinate the wound.

## XI.

And this is one reason that makes Pthilicks so difficult to cure, because so much the more any thing cutteth and cleanseth, so much the more it hinders conglutination.

## XII.

Therefore special regard must be had of the time, that the cleansing things be given at beginning, and glutinative at the latter end.

## XIII.

Thus you see what things are accidentally Pectoral,

ctoral, viz. such as are Emollient, or cut tough viscous flegm, or make thick thin defluctions, or qualifie sharp humours, or ease the roughness of the Artery.

XIV.

Such are natural Pectorals, whose Genuine property is to strengthen the Breast and Lungs.

CHAP. III.

Of CORDIALS.

I.

**A**S the Brain is the seat of the Senses, so is the Heart of the Affections; it is also the fountain of Life, and the original of heat.

II.

Its properties are two :

1. To give life to the Body by its heat.
2. To give vigor to the will by its affections.

III.

Such things as chear the mind, strengthen the heart it self, or refresh the Spirits, are called Cordials.

IV.

Yet are not Cordials of one and the same nature; for whereas the heart is variously troubled, either with anger, or love, or fear, or hatred, or sadness, or other affections, it is refreshed either by temperating or taking away the same.

V.

But although such things as cause Love, or mitigate anger, or take away fear or sadness, &c. may properly be called Cordials, yet belong they not to

my scope at this time; if my secrets in Nature will not yet furnish you with them, you may in time have those that may.

## V I.

The truth is, these are afflictions of the mind, (or that which I hold to be the Soul) and therefore are of a higher nature than this Treatise aims at.

## V I I.

For I hold Man to consist of three parts; a Spirit which goes to God that gave it, a Soul [*ψυχή*] and a Body which is terrene, and must return to the earth from whence it came.

## V I I I.

My scope is here to speak of those things which properly afflict the heart.

## I X.

The heart is afflicted by too much heat, by poysons, by filthy vapours.

## X.

Against these the heart is assisted in a threefold manner, viz. by cooling the heat of Feavers, resisting poyson, and strengthening the heart by a peculiar property.

## X I.

Yet whatsoever cools is not a Cordial; for Lead is as cool as Pearls, yet is not a Cordial as Pearls are.

## X I I.

Neither whatsoever resists Poyson is Cordial, but only such as succour the heart oppressed by it.

## X I I I.

Such things as resist Poyson are called Alexiteria, and Alexipharmaca.

## X I V.

XIV.

Neither do they all operate after one and the same manner; for some strengthen the heart against poison in general, others by a certain antipathy are opposed to one particular kind of poison

XV.

Such things as strengthen the heart, do it either by Planetary influence, which Doctors call a hidden way, because it is hidden from such, who instead of viewing the wonders of God in the Creation, are filling their pockets with his dung-hill.

XVI.

Or else they do it by similitude of substance.

XVII.

Or else by a forcible drawing away of what offends it.

XVIII.

And indeed all Cordials may be called by the name of Alexiteria, or Antidotes, or counterpoisons, because they strengthen the heart, which it is the nature of poisons to assault, however it seemed otherwise to Physicians.

XIX.

So then, as Smells refresh the Animal Spirits, Aromatics the natural; so such things as keep melancholy vapours from the heart, refresh the vital spirit of Man.

CHAP. IV.

OF STOMACHICALS.

I.

**M**edicines appropriated to the Ventricle, are called Stomachicals, although the Stomach



be not the Ventricle, but the Orifice of it, or the inferiour part of the Throat, which you will.

## I I.

The Ventricle is afflicted with three kinds of Maladies :

1. Appetite lost.
2. Concoction weakned.
3. The retentive faculty vitiated.

## I I I.

To pro- Those things which provoke Appetite, are u-  
voke the sually of a grateful sharpness.  
appetite.

## I V.

These by the Latins are called *Orectica*, after the Greek name.

## V.

But although Appetite be hindred by divers causes, as the Stomach repleated by Choler, or putrefied humours, &c. yet those things which purge these, are not properly called *Orecticks*, but only such things as by sharpness contract the Stomach, and by a grateful taste delight it.

## V I.

Concoct- Those things further concoction, which either  
ion. cherish the Ventricle by convenient heat or Aromaticall faculty, or strengthen it by Astral Propriety.

## V I I.

\* Viz. Her. Of which latter, take this one, the internal  
Gizzard. Skin of the \* Ventricle of a Hen, helpeth concoction exceedingly, nothing like it, and thereby resisteth all Diseases proceeding from want of digestion, which are as Atomes in the Sun.

## V I I I.

Retenti- The retentive faculty being vitiated, causeth  
on. belching, vomiting and fluxes.

## I X.

IX.

These are corrected by Astringent Medicines, and yet some Astringent Medicines are very adverse to the Stomach, therefore use only such as are stomachical.

X.

Orecticks ought not to be given to a foul Stomach. The way of use.

XI.

Such things as help Concoction, the Greeks call *πρωτικά*, and they ought to be given before meat.

XII.

The Reasons are,

1. Because heat is to be stirred up in the inferior, not in the superiour part of the Ventricle.
2. Because the Ventricle ought to be made warm before it receive the food.

XIII.

The manner of administration of such things as bind the Ventricle, is to be regulated according to the end of giving them.

XIV.

Against vomiting give them after repast, against fluxes before.

XV.

For being given after, they drive the nourishment downwards, and are more subject to cause a flux, than to stop it.

CHAP.

## CHAP. V.

## Of HEPATICALS.

## I.

**H**epaticks may be divided into these three divisions.

1. Such as delight the Liver.
2. Such as add strength to it.
3. Such as take away its vices.

## II.

Taste and Appetite are sent before, and committed to the Tongue and Stomach for the digestion of food; by which both the quality and quantity is judged.

## III.

The Meseraick Veins also have their office to draw convenient nourishments.

## IV.

Such things then are delightful to the Liver, which are delightful to these.

## V.

I put all these together, because many times Taste and Appetite affect that which the Meseraick Veins dislike; and that's the reason many times men affect those meats which agree not with them.

## VI.

Also the Liver is delighted with some Medicines as well as nourishments.

## VII.

For all such things as are sweet, the Liver greedily draws to it.

VIII.

Such things as strengthen the Liver, do gently bind.

IX.

For concoction requires adstriction, to keep together both the heat and the humour to be concocted, lest it be dispersed.

X.

Yet the Liver needs not so great adstrictions as the Stomach, because the passages of the Ventricle are more open and large, but the veins of the Liver, by which it either draws the chyle, or distributes the blood to the rest of the body: therefore the adstriction must not be great, lest it obstruct the Liver, or hinder the distribution of the blood.

XI.

Amongst all the rest of the Entrails, the Liver is most subject to obstructions.

XII.

Therefore such Medicines as hinder obstructions, or help them being made, are appropriated to the Liver; and they are such which cut and attenuate without vehement heat, such as have both a cleansing and a binding quality.

XIII.

Inflammations commonly follow obstructions, and they require cooling things; yet will not any cool thing serve the turn, but such as are Hepatical.

XIV.

Take heed in the use of cool things, that you extinguish not the faculty of concoction; or so cool the Diaphragma, which lies very near, that you hinder respiration.



## CHAP. VI.

## Of SPLENICALS.

## I.

THree Excrements are especially beheld in the breeding of blood; a watry humour, choler, and melancholy.

## II.

The proper seat of Choler is the Gall, the watry humour goes to the Reins, the thicker part of the blood the Spleen challengeth to its self.

## III.

This is either adust by too violent heat, and then it is called *Atra Bilis*; or thick and terrene of it self, and that is properly called Melancholy.

## IV.

From hence now is the force and nature of Splenical Medicines found out.

## V.

\* Hard-  
ness. For *Atra Bilis* often produceth madness, and pure Melancholy \* Schirrhous, and vitiates the concoction of the blood, whence follows Dropfies, and also breeds obstructions.

## VI.

Splenicals therefore are of two sorts, some appropriated to *Atra Bilis*, some to melancholy; for of purging I shall write nothing here, but leave that to the last Chapter.

## VII.

*Atra Bilis* is tempered by cooling and moistning, yet is it not so hot that it should need things extremely cold.

## VIII.

VIII.

Such are those, which we wrote of amongst the Cordials, that cause mirth by keeping melancholy vapours from the heart.

IX.

Melancholy humour is removed by cutting and opening Medicines, which differ from Hepaticks, because they want adstriction; for the Spleen, seeing it wants concoction, needs no adstriction.

X.

Moreover, the Spleen is not only obstructed by melancholy humours, but also made hard.

XI.

The cure of this is wrought by Emollients, which must not be given inwardly, lest they hinder the concoction of the Ventricle, but applyed outwardly.

CHAP. VII.

*Of RENALS, and VESICALS.*

I.

THAT the watry humour may be separated from the blood, Nature hath added the Reins to the rest of the bowels.

II.

Because a man should do something else besides continually piss, the Bladder was added to contain the Urine.

III.

Both of these are easily corrupted by the vices of the Urine.

## IV.

The Urine is stopped by Stones or Inflammations, or gross humours; therefore Medicines appropriated to the Reins and Bladder, (which are called Nephritica and Cystica) are to be distinguished into three parts:

1. Some cool.
2. Some cut gross humors.
3. Others break the Stone.

## V.

The constitution of the Reins and Bladder is such, that binding things are extream dangerous to them, because they stop the Urine.

## VI.

Those Medicines are then proper to the Reins and Bladder, which are lenitive, cut and extenuate without violent heat.

## VII.

Only take this caution, That seeing the Bladder is farther from the center of the Body than the Reins, it requires stronger Medicines, lest their strength be consumed before they come at the grieved place.

## CHAP. VIII.

## Of HYSTERICALS.

**T**ouching provoking and stopping the terms, shall be spoken hereafter in another Treatise.

## I I.

The Womb thus resembles the Brain and Ventricle, that it manifestly draws to Cephalicks and Aromaticks, and flies from their contraries.

III.

For this is confirmed by daily experience, that in the fits of the Mother, which is the Womb turned upwards; stinking things applied to the Nose, and sweet things to the Matrix, reduce it; but sweet things applied to the Nose, and stinking things to the Matrix produce it.

IV.

In fallings out of the Womb we use the contrary.

V.

This made some Sots ascribe the sense of smelling to the Womb; whereas indeed and in truth, That such things please the Brain and nervous parts, is not because of their smelling, but because they are friendly to it by their own substance.

VI.

The Stomach is offended with stinking things; and a man that hath no smell will vomit them up again, why? because they are obnoxious to it.

VII.

So also the Womb is offended with stinking things, not because it smells them, but because they are adverse to its nature.

VIII.

For smells are the Judges of Medicines, by which Nature teacheth what is fit and convenient for it self.

IX.

So then those Medicines are Hysterical, which by binding stop the terms, or by inciding provoke them, (of which more hereafter) or such as are grateful to the Womb, which are known by a sweet or aromatical favour.



## CHAP. XI.

## Of ARTHRITICALS.

## I.

**T**He Joints are most infested with capital Diseases, and therefore cured with Cephalick Medicines.

## II.

The reason is soon given, which is, because they are of a Nervous quality.

## III.

Those things are appropriated to the Joynts, which have a drying and a heating quality, with a certain leight adstriction.

## IV.

Besides such things as are appropriated to the Joynts, by a peculiar appropriation, or astral influence, of which Knot-grass is one, and therefore by some called Joint-wort.

## V.

Yet take notice of this, that because the Joynts are more remote from the Center, they require stronger Medicines than the brain doth.

## VI.

As to what belongeth to pains in the Joynts, this is the manner of proceeding.

## VII.

Pain is either taken away, or asswaged; but its true cure is by taking away what causeth it.

## VIII.

Yet sometimes so great is its fury, that we must  
give

give Anodynes before we can meddle with the cause, and that especially when it causeth heat, influxion of blood, or inflammation.

**I X.**

Besides, the Medicines which take away the cause of pain are very hot, and therefore to be forbore in such cases.

**X.**

Also the mannner of easing pains, is two-fold ; for if you regard the pain it self, use Anodynes ; if the heat, use Refrigeratives.

**X I.**

Also take notice of thus much, that Flegm compacted in the joynts, when it is teazed a little, causeth pain and influxion.

**X I I.**

Such Medicines as take away the cause of such pain, are strong Cutters and Drawers, which neither agree with Choler nor Blood.

**X I I I.**

When you perceive that there is attraction and discussion enough made, so that the pain is ceased, and the cause of it taken away, use adstrictions to strengthen the joynts, that they may not easily excite more defluxions.

## CHAP. X.

*Of P U R G E S.*

**T**His last Chapter I shall divide into these parts.

<i>Of Purging Medicines.</i>	1.
<i>Of their Election.</i>	2.
<i>Correction.</i>	3.
<i>Of the Time</i> } <i>of purging</i> }	4.
<i>Manner</i> }	5.

## P A R T I.

*Of Purging Medicines.*

## I.

**P**hysicians (for want of other things to trouble their heads) make a great business whether Purges work by a hidden or manifest Quality; whereas the Heavens teach me a better Lesson.

## II.

These two questions are to be answered :

1. What humour is to be evacuated ?
2. What Medicine to do it by ?

## III.

III.

For as the same peccant humour is not in all, so neither doth the same Medicine agree with all.

IV.

Then you must consider by what way to bring it forth; for all humours are not brought forth by one and the same way; for some are brought out by lenitive, some by cleansing, some by sweating; of which more in another Treatise.

V.

Our scope is here to speak of such as draw and cast out humours from the remote parts of the body.

VI.

The Antients thought all Purges to be hot, but the Moderns have found out by experience that some are cold.

VII.

But this is certain, all Purges have a certain pravity in them, which is inimical to the Ventricle and Bowels; and this conduceth much to their purging property, for it makes Nature hasten expulsion.

VIII.

But what should be the reason of their attractive Quality, Physicians know not; and then they run into the old Bush, *They do it by a hidden property.* The Sots being not able to see that every like draws its like.

IX.

The differences of Purges are various; for some are addicted to Flegm, some to Choler, others to Melancholy, and some to watry humours; and they are all of the same nature with those humours they purge.



## X.

Some purge gently, some violently, because some are more inimical to Nature than others.

## PART. II.

*Of the choyce of Purges.*

## I.

**T**He skill of a Phisician is to appropriate the purging Medicine to the humour offending.

## II.

Above all things in Purges, have a care of trying quaint experiences: it had once almost cost me my life in doing it upon mine own body.

## III.

The Humours to be purged I told you were Flegm, Water, Choler, and Melancholly.

## IV.

Such Medicines as are cutting, are convenient for thick and gross humours; as Flegm and Melancholly; but Lenitive will serve for Choler, & Water, because they are fluent, and fit to be purged out.

## V.

Therefore such things as purge Choler, add cutting things to them, and they purge Melancholly; such as purge Flegm, take away the cutting things, and they purge Water.

## VI.

There are besides things which properly purge Water, called Hydragoga, which violently call Water from remote places, being of an exceeding hot penetrating quality, and dangerous, if not regulated by an able brain.

## VII.

VII.

Medicines of a binding quality are deadly enemies to Flegm and Melancholly, because they congeal the gross humours; but very apt for Choler and putrified Flegm, for they often cause Fluxes

VIII.

Also the colour will in part shew the operation of the Medicine, as yellow purgeth Choler, black Melancholly, white Flegm: Whitnes Rhubarb, black Hellebore, and Agarick.

IX.

And whereas some Medicines work violently, others gently, if the humours be tough and remote, use such as are violent, else not.

X.

Yet such as work with too much speed, are fit neither for viscous or remote humours.

XI.

Lastly, some purges work by Stool, others by Vomit.

XII.

Vomits are appropriated to Crudities in the Stomach; yet they weaken the Stomach, Breast and Lungs, and spoil the Eyes,

PART. III,

*Of the Correction of Purgas.*

I.

**M**Anythings in Purgas want correction; some of them are known before the Purgas given, and some after.

## II.

All Purges almost are inimical to Nature, correct that with such things as strengthen the Stomach and Heart.

## III.

Lenitive Purges breed wind, correct them with such things as expel wind.

## IV.

Yea even Purges which are not windy of themselves, yet by their heat they stir up the wind that is in the body, (of which number Senna is one) therefore correct them.

## V.

Such as by their sharpness corrode the Bowels correct them, not with Astringents, but such things as lenifie and make thick, or with Gum-Tragacanth is notable.

## VI.

For Astringent things detain them long in the body, and do mischief that way.

## VII.

The vices of Purges is known afterwards by their working too fast or too slowly.

## VIII.

If hot broths will not perform the latter, a Clyster will.

## IX.

The former is done by such things as bind and strengthen.

## PART. IV.

### *Of the time of Purging.*

#### I.

IF the humour be tough and viscus, prepare them first by cutting Syrops.

#### II.

Yet do this with wisdom too, lest the peccant humour be thrust into the Veins, and procure a fever.

#### III.

If the Purge be strong, empty the Bowels first with a Clyster.

#### IV.

Let the Purge be given two or three hours before meat; neither let any sweet thing be given after it, lest it convert it into Aliment.

## PART. V.

### *Of the manner of Purging.*

#### I.

MEDICINES made up in a dry form, are best to purge remote places of the body; and the reason is, because they stay longest in the body.

#### II.

For the contraries, give liquids; whether you boil them or not, it matters not. That must be



drawn from the matter purging; for the infusion of some things is better than the decoction, as Rhubarb, and Polypodium is contrary.

## III.

If the matter be tough and tenacious, you cannot purge it away at once, but must do it by degrees, judge the like if it lie in remote places: for if you go about to do it at once, you will sooner consume the natural strength, than the peccant humour.

## IV.

And this is the reason melancholy diseases cannot speedily be removed.

## V.

The dose of purging Medicines cannot be determined; for they are various both in respect of their own nature, of the nature of the disease, the strength of the disease, the part afflicted, the humour afflicting, the age, and strength, and sex of the Patient, the season of the year, &c.

## VI.

Some things help Nature to evacuate by their sweetness or fair language; as Prunes, Sevesten, Tamarind, Cassia, Manna.

Others carry away ill humours, by sympathy with them; as Agarick, Aloes, Myrobalans.

Others fiercely force them out by their Acrimony, Nature being willing to part with the worst first; as Scamony, Colocynthis, Elaterium, Euphorbium, &c.

IV.  
fion  
> as  
  
an-  
de-  
for  
ner  
hu-  
  
n-  
  
e-  
of  
e,  
u-  
e  
  
ir  
a-  
  
y  
-  
-  
-  
T

SELECT MEDICINAL  
APHORISMS

AND  
RE E I P T S

For most Diseases our Frail Natures are in-  
cident to whilst we are upon Earth.

DIGESTED

In such a method, that a Remedy is prefixed  
for any Disease appertaining to Mans Bo-  
dy: Beginning at the Head, and going  
through every part of the Body to the  
Feet.

---

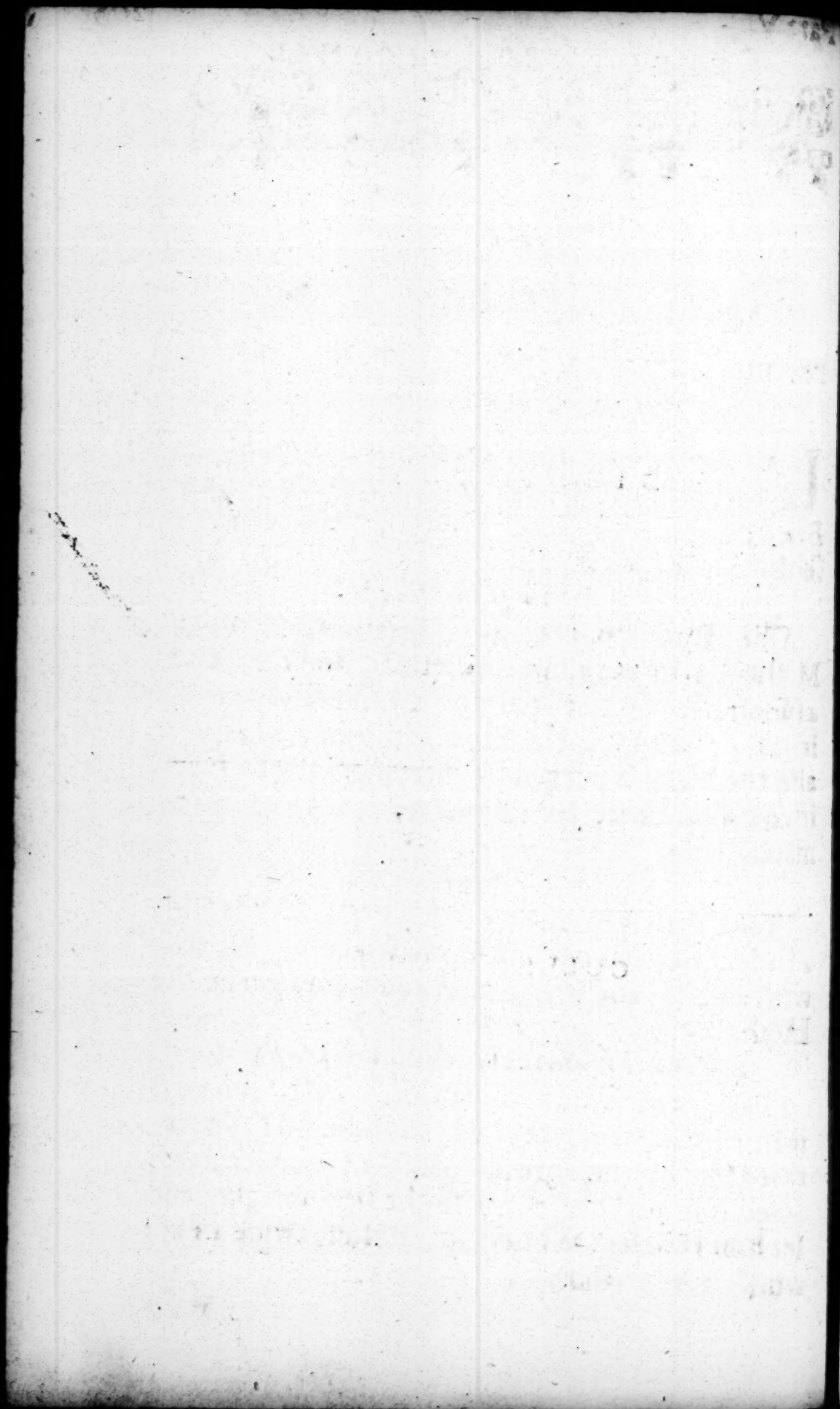
PART. V.

---

COLLECTED BY

NICHOLAS CULPEPER, Gent.  
Student in Astrology and Physick.

LONDON,  
Printed for N. Brook, at the Angel in  
Cornhil. 1671.





## CHAP. I.

*Medicines for the Head, and its Diseases.*1. *A general Caution.*

**L** Et such as love their Heads or Brains, either forbear such things as are obnoxious to the Brain, as Garlick, Leeks, Onions, beware of surfeiting and drunkenness.

2. *To purge the Head.*

The Head is purged by Gargarisms, of which Mustard in my opinion is excellent, and therefore a spoonful of Mustard put into the mouth, is excellent for one that is troubled with the Lethargie: also the Head is purged by sneezing; but be sure, if you would keep your Brain clear, keep your Stomach clean.

3. *Another.*

Take the juyce of Primrose-leaves, mix it with a little milk, and get one to blow it up thy Nostrils with a quill, and it will most admirably purge the Head.

4. *For a Rheum in the Head, and the Palsie.*

Take a red Onion, and bruse it well, and boyl it in a little Verjuyce, and put thereto a little clarified Honey, and a great spoonful of good Mustard; when it is well boyled, raise the sick upright, and let him receive the smell up his Noife twice a day, whilst it is very hot,

5. *For*



5. *For a Rheum in the Head.*

Boyl Pimpernel well in Wine, in the evening hot, but in the morning cold.

6. *Another.*

Stew Onions in a close pot, and bath the Head and Mouth, and Nose therewith.

7. *For the falling off of the Hair.*

Beat Linseeds very well, and mix them with Sallet Oil; and when you have well mixed them, anoint the head therewith, and in three or four times using, it will help you.

8. *To purge the Head.*

Take some Pellitory of Spain, beat it into powder, and mix it with a little Savasacre in powder; then drink a draught of Malmesey, or Muskadel, if you can get no Malmesey, and when you have so done, put a spoonful of this powder into the mouth, rowling it up and down (but swallow it not) till your mouth be hot and full of Flegm, then spit it all out, and kneeling down with your head inclined, gape as wide as you can, and the Flegm will avoid from all the parts of the head.

9 *For the falling off the Hair by reason of a scald Head.*

Warm a little Oil of Tartar, (that which is made by Deliquium) and rub your head with it, or that part of it which is scabby, and in eight or nine dayes the hair will come again.

10. *For the Head-ach, specially that which comes by drunkenness.*

Mix juyce of Ivy-leaves with Oyle and Vinegar, and often rub your Temples and Nostrils therewith.

11. *For vertigo or Dizziness.*

Make Tents of Linnen Cloth, and dip them in Cina-

Cinamon water, and put them up into thy Nostrils, and they will instantly give thee help to admiration.

12. *To purge the Head.*

Chew the Root of *Pallitory of Spain*, and chew it on both sides of thy mouth, and as the Rheum fall down into thy mouth, spit it out, but retain the Root there still, till you think the Head is purged enough for that time.

CHAP. II

*For the Eyes, and their Impediments.*

13. *Præmium.*

Such things as offend the Head usually offend the Eyes; as Garlick, Onions, &c.

Such things as purge the Head, usually purge the Eyes; as Gargarisms before mentioned, and Sneezing. Have a care of catching cold after sneezing.

14. *For eyes that are Blood-shot.*

Beat the white of new-laid Eggs very well, and moisten a little fine Flax with it, and apply it to the eye being close shut, at night going to bed, in the morning take it off, and wear a green cloath before the eye all day; the next night renew it; and in three nights it will cure.

15. *For Eyes that are bl. sh. d.*

Only wear a piece of black Sarcenet before thy eye, and meddle with no Medicine, only forbear wine and strong drink.

19. *An excellent water to clear the sight.*

Take of Fennel, Eye-bright, Roses white, Chelidone, Vervain and Rue, of each a handful, the

L ver

Liver of a He-goat chopt small, (I suppose the Liver of a She-goat were better for a Woman) infuse them well in Eyebrigh-water, then distill them in Alembick, and you shall have a water will clear the sight beyond comparifon.

17. *Another.*

Take green Walnuts, Husk and all, before they have shells, as also a few Walnut-leaves; distill them cold, and drop the water into your eyes.

18. *For a hurt in the Eye with stroke.*

Take Agrimony, and bruse it very well, and temper it with White-wine, and the White of an Egg: spread it pretty thick upon a cloth, like a Plaister, and apply it to outside of the Eye-lid, and although it be almost out, it will cure it.

19. *To preserve a man's sight a long time.*

Eat one branch of Rue, and another of Eyebrigh every morning, with a Fig or two. This do three mornings every week.

20. *To draw Rheum back from the Eyes.*

Take an Egg and roast it hard, then pull off the shell, and slit it in two, and apply it hot to the nape of the neck, and thou shalt find ease presently.

21. *A Medicine not only for the Eyes, but also for the Megrims.*

Take the White of a new laid Egg, a spoonful of the best Ginger in powder, a spoonful of strong White-wine-Vinegar, and a spoonful of white Rose-water, if for the Eyes; of red Rose-water, if for the Megrims: beat them all together; and having made two Plaisters of Flax, for each Temple one, dip them in this Medicine, and bind them to the Temples with a Cloth; this in three or four nights hath brought sight to such as have been blind eight weeks. If your Eyes be gumm'd up in the morning,



morning, as it is like they will, wash them with a little white Rose, or Eyebright-water.

22. *For such as have a skin growing before their Eyes.*

Take a sawcer full of white Rose-water, and as much Myrrhe as a Nut, beaten into fine powder, bind up the Myrrhe in a fine linnen cloth, and let it lie in the Rose-water twelve hours, by which time your Rose-water will begin to look red; drop this water into the Eye, and it will cure it to admiration.

23. *For the Web in the Eye.*

Take the Gall of a Hare, and clarified Honey, of each equal proportions: mix them together, and lay it to the Web.

24. *For such as have lost their sight by reason of the Small-Pox.*

Take Pimpernel, stamp it, and strain it, and put the juyce of it into the Eye with a feather morning and evening.

The same is an excellent remedy for a Pin and Web, and Pearl; and indeed the general Pimpernel is a gallant remedy for the Eyes.

25. *For the Pin and Web.*

Take Ivy-leaves that grow upon an Ash-tree, wipe them clean, stamp them, and strain them, having added a little womans milk to them; if it be a man that hath the sore eye, (saith mine Author) let it be the milk of a woman that bore a girl; if a woman, the milk of a woman that bore a boy. I can find no reason for this, but shall deliver my own opinion, and my reason for it: If it be the left eye of a man, or the right eye of a woman, let it be the milk of a woman that bore a girl, because those eyes are under the Moon; if it be the right eye of a man,



man, or the left of a woman, let it be the milk of a woman that bore a boy, because those eyes are under the Sun. But to proceed: the sorer the eye is, the more juyce you must take. Drop this into the diseased eye with a feather four times a day.

26. *For sore eyes proceeding of heat.*

Take the juyce of Houfleeke, Womans milk, Rose-water, and the white of an Egg well beaten, mix all these together, and dip Flax in it, and lay it to your eyes when you go to bed, binding it on, it is a most excellent remedy.

27. *For Eyes that are swelled.*

Take two spoonfuls of Womans milk one spoonful of Rose-water, the pap of a roasted Apple, and the yolk of a new-laid Egg; boil all these in a Pewter Vessel over a Chafing-dish of Coals till it be thick; then spread it upon a cloth, and lay it to your eyes luke-warm when you go to bed; in the morning wash your eyes with Womans milk, and in twice or thrice it will cure you.

### CHAP. III.

*For the Ears, and their impediments.*

28. *For deafness, with noise in the Ear.*

**T**Ake a little black Wool, and dip it in strong Spirit of Wine, wring it pretty hard out, and stop your Ears with it; dip and wring it out again, once in a day.

29. *For pain in the Ears.*

Drop a little Oil of sweet Almonds into the Ear, and it ceaseth the pain instantly: (and yet Oil of bitter Almonds is our Doctors common remedy.)

30. *For*

30. *For an Imposthume in the Ear.*

Boyl some milk, and put it into a stone-pot with a narrow mouth, and hold the soar ear over the pot whilst the milk is very hot, that the vapour of the milk may ascend into the Ear: this is an often approved remedy to take away the pain, and break the Imposthume.

31. *To take an erwig out of the Ear.*

Take an old Apple, and cut in two pieces, and lay one piece to the Ear, and lye down upon that side, and the Earwig will come out to the Apple: it seems they love Apples better than Ears: 'Tis a wonder they be not called Applewigs.

Another was cured by the first remedy mentioned in this Chapter.

## CHAP. IV.

*For the Nose, and its Infirmities*

32. *For Polipus; or a fleshy substance growing in the Nose.*

**T**AKE the juyce of Ivy, and make a Tent with a little Cotton, the which dip in the juyce and put it up in the Nostril.

33. *For bleeding at Nose.*

Let them that bleed at nose smell to a Hogs-turd.

34. *Another for the same.*

If it be a man that bleeds, wrap a cloth moistened in strong White-wine-Vinegar about their privities; if it be a woman, wrap it about her Breasts.

35. *To cleanse the Nose.*

Snuff up the juyce of red Beet-roots; it will cleanse not only the Nose, but also the Head: this is a singular remedy for such as are troubled with hard congealed stuff in their Nostrils.

36. *For bleeding at the Nose.*

Put a piece of hot Hogs Turd as it comes from the Hog, up the Nose.

37. *Another.*

Bind the Arms and Legs as hard as you can with a piece of Tape-ribboning; that perhaps may call back the blood.

38. *Another.*

Hold a living Toad near the Nose, it stops the blood instantly, because the blood flies from its enemy.

39. *Another.*

They say Smallage borne about one, stops bleeding, both by the Nose, and by Wounds.

40. *For a Canker in the Nose.*

Boyl strong Ale till it be thick; if the Canker be in the outside of the Nose, spread it as a Plaister, and apply it; if in the inside, make a Tent of a linnen Rag, and put it up the Nostril.

41. *Another for the Polypus.*

The water of Adders tongue snuffed up the Nose, is very good; but it were better in my opinion to keep a Rag continually moistened with it in the Nose.

42. *For an Impostume in the Nose.*

Keep a Rag continually in your Nose moistened with the water of yellow Flower-de-luce, such as grow by Rivers sides: the juyce of Carduus Benedictus will do the like.

43. *For bleeding at the Nose.*

Take Amber and bruise into gross powder, put it upon a Chafing-dish of Coales, and receive the smoak up into the Nose with a Funnel.

44. *Another.*

A certain man that had bled four and twenty hours,



hours was thus cured ; he took a scain of black thread, and put one end of it up his Nōstril, and set fire to the other end ; and so soon as the smok came to his Nostril, the blood presently stopped.

45. *Another.*

When no other means will stop the bleeding at the Nose, it hath been known that it hath been stopped by opening a Vein in the Ear.

## CHAP. V.

*Of the mouth, and its Diseases.*46 *ACaution.*

**V**Hosoever would keep their Mouth, or Tongue, or Nose, or Eyes, or Ears, or Teeth, from pain or infirmities, let them often use sneezing, and such Gargarisms as they were instructed in, in the first Chapter ; for indeed most of the infirmities, if not all, which infest those parts, proceed from Rheum.

47. *For spitting blood.*

Drink a spoonful of juyce of Betony, mixed with milk every morning. My Author says it must be Goats milk, but I know not his reason.

48. *For a stinking breath.*

Take the juyce of Rue, and black Mints, ( I think he means Horse mints ) and snuff it up the Nostriils.

49. *To recover lost speech.*

Take the juyce of Sage and Primroses, and hold it in the mouth, and it will cause thee to speak presently.



50. *For extream heat of the mouth.*

Take Rib-wort, and boyl it in red Wine, and hold the decoction as warm in your mouth as you can endure it.

51. *For a Canker in the mouth.*

Wash the mouth often with Verjuyce.

52. *Another.*

Wash the mouth with water of Perwinkle, or Lavender, or Fumitory, or Burnet; but in my opinion the decoction of either is better.

53. *Another.*

If the Canker be very inveterate, and eating, take old rusty Bacon, and Vine-roots, of each an ounce, of Wheat-bran an handful, of Brine wherein flesh hath been salted, two or three pints: boyl them together; and when you take them off from the fire, receive the steam up into your mouth with the funnel, afterwards wash your mouth with any of the foregoing waters.

54. *Of the falling down of the Pallat.*

There is a mad fantastical opinion to this day in the brains of the vulgar, that there is such a thing in the mouth which they call the Pallat, which will fall down, and be put up again, especially by an old woman which hath no more teeth in her head than eyes, and all of them nought; whereas indeed the truth is, the Uvula is a spungie piece of flesh in the mouth, and therefore very subject to recieve either inflammations or humours, which any hot thing dissipates; from thence came the fashion of putting it up again with Pepper and Honey.

55. *Another.*

I add this only for the conceits sake, it may be true enough, though I can give no reason for it; it is this: Take a handfull of Featherfew, rub it well

be-

between your hands, and lay it to the top of your head, and it will draw the Uvula up.

---

## CHAP. VI.

*Of the Teeth, and their Medicines.*56. *A Caution.*

**I**F you will keep your Teeth from rotting, or taking, wash your mouth continually every morning with juyce of Lemmons, and afterwards rub your Teeth either with a Sige-leaf, or else with a little Nutmeg in power; also wash your mouth with a little fair water after meats; for the only way to keep teeth sound, and free from pain, is to keep them clear.

57. *To keep teeth white.*

Dip a little piece of white cloth in vinegar of Quinces, and rub your Gums with it, for it is of a gallant binding quality; and not only makes the Teeth white, but also strengthens the Gums, fastens the Teeth, and also causeth a sweet breath.

58. *For the Tooth-ach.*

Boyl Wheat-bran, & stale Ale together, till it be as thick as Mustard: Let it stand while it is cold, then strain what you can out of it, and add to what you have strained the like quantity of juyce of Rews; make it into a paste, which paste tye up into a little bag of fine linnen cloth; lay one of them between your Cheek and your aking tooth; lye down on that side, and let the water run out at your mouth: this using three or four times, will not only cure the Tooth-ach, but also cleanse the Brain,

59. *Another.*

Take Hounds tongue, and stamp it, and fry it with Butter, and make a plaister of it, and binde it to the cheek on that side the pain is on.

60. *Another.*

Take a pint of the strongest White-wine-Vinegar you can get, a handful of Sage, a quarter of a handful of roots, of red Nettles, and as much Oaken rind : boil all these together, and wash your mouth with it.

61. *To make teeth fall out of themselves.*

Take the root of a Mulbery-tree, lay it in steep in stronger Vinegar ; then take it out, and dry it in the Sun ; beat it into powder, do but touch a tooth with that powder, and it will drop out.

62. *For rotting of the teeth.*

Wash thy mouth often with the water of Motherwort ; the water of Vervain will do the like.

63. *For the Tooth-ach.*

Take Ivy berries, and bruise them ; and when you have done so, boyl them in strong White-wine-Vinegar, wash your mouth with the decoction, and lay the Ivy-berries hot to your cheek.

64. *Another.*

Roast an Egg hard, and when you have done, put to it a spoonful of Salt, and two spoonfuls of White-wine-vinegar : beat them all together to a pap very well, and now and then put a little into your mouth.

65. *To make Childrens teeth cut.*

Take the brains of a Hare, or the brains of a Hen, and rub the Child's Gums with them once or twice a day, and it will make the teeth cut without pain.

66. *Another.*



66. *Another.*

Take the tooth of a Colt of a year old, and hang it about the neck of the child, and this will do it, if *Mizaldus* say true, And now give me leave to quote an experiment of my own; One of my children breeding teeth extream hardly, having read this in *Mizaldus*, it seemed to me impossible to get a Colts tooth, ( of a year old; ) wherefore I bought a Calves head, and took one of its teeth, and hung about its neck, and the very first night three of its teeth cut; which because it is very unusual so many teeth should cut in one night, I cannot but ascribe some virtue to the Medicine. Besides all this, I am of opinion, That the tooth of a dead man hung about the neck of a child, will do it far better than either; I am not determin'd to give my reasons at this time, yet I will give you a verisimile for it; the tooth of a dead man born about a man, instantly suppresseth the pains of the teeth, as I have often found my self, when all other remedies have failed me; and if this be true, why not the other;

67. *To fasten the teeth.*

Seeth the roots of Vervain in old Wine, and wash your teeth often with them, and it will fasten them.

68. *For the tooth ach.*

Take the inner rind of an Elder-tree, and bruise it, and put thereto a little Pepper, and make it into balls, and hold them between the teeth that ache.



## CHAP. VII.

*Of the Gums, and their Infirmities.*

69. *For a Scurvey in the Gums.*

**T**AKE Cloves, and boyl them in Rosewater, then dry them; and beat them to powder, and rub the Gums with the powder, and drink the decoction in the morning fasting an hour after it. Use red Rose-water, for that is the best.

70. *For a Canker in the Gums.*

Take half a pint of White-wine, a quarter of a pint of water, an ounce of burnt Allum, a handful of Cinkfoyl-roots bruised; boyl all these in an Earthen-pot (for the sharpness of Allum will make Vert-de-greece of a Brass Vessel) over a gentle fire till half be consumed; scum it well, strain it, and keep it in a Glass till you have occasion to use it, and when you have occasion, wash your Gums with it.

71. *Another.*

Take Herb of Grace or Rew, which you will, stamp it, and press out the juyce, and mix it with as much strong Vinegar, (the best way is to put the Vinegar to it, after you have well beaten it) and so strain them out hard both together: when you have occasion to use it, wet a Linnen Rag four or five times double in the aforesaid juyce, and apply it to the Gums: for the Canker be very great and eating, mix a little burnt Allum with it.

72. *For roting and consuming the Gums.*

Take Sage-water, and wash your mouth with it every morning, and afterwards rub your mouth with a Sage-Leaf.

CHAP.

## CHAP. VIII.

*Of the Face, and its Infirmities.*73. *The Cause.*

**I**T is palpable, that the cause of redness and breaking out of the Face, is a venemous matter, or filthy vapour ascending from the Stomach towards the head: where meeting with a Rheum or Flegm thence descending, mixeth with it, and breaketh out in the Face. Therefore let the first intention of cure be to cleanse the Stomach.

74. *Caution Negative.*

Let such as are troubled with red Faces, abstain from salt Meats, salt Fish and Herrings; drinking of strong Beer, strong Waters or Wine, Garlick, Onions, and Mustard; yea, if it be a Welch Man, or Woman, he must abstain from toasted Cheese, and Leeks; and that is a Hell upon Earth to them.

75. *Caution Affirmatively.*

Let them use in the Broaths and stewed Meats, Purslain, Sorrel, Wood-sorrel, Lettice, Sparagus tops and roots, the tender tops of Hops, Endive and Succory, let them alwayes keep their bodies laxative, and sleep with their hands high.

76. *For a red face.*

Take Sow-thistles, Borrage, Sorrel, Purslane, French Barley, Parsly-roots, and Liquorish; boyl them together in running water, and drink a draught of the decoction first in the morning, and last at night.

77. *To*

77. *To make the face fair.*

Boyle Rosemary-flowers in White-wine, and drink a draught of the decoction every morning, and wash your face with another part of it : yet in my opinion it were a better way by far to take a pound of Rosemary-flowers, and put them into a Runlet, to a gallon of White-wine ; shake them together, and let them stand so a moneth ; then strain it out, and keep the Wine for the aforesaid use.

78. *Another.*

Wash your face with Bean-flower-water ; yet in my opinion Burnet-water is best, though my Author holds the contrary.

79. *For a white Scurf in the face.*

Take a pint of Vinegar, in which dissolve an ounce of Camphire, let them stand together close stopped 14 dayes, (saith my Author) but it is very probable half the time will serve the turn ; then wash your face with it every morning : this hath holpen a Gentlewoman that had a Scurf in her face divers years, as though she had been a Leper.

80. *For freckles in the face.*

Annoint thy face at night going to bed, with the blood of a Hare, or of a Bull ; the next morning wash it off again : and this, though it make one look more like a Fury than a Man, it will cure him.

81. *Another.*

Stamp Sallendine, press out the juyce, and mix it with the like quantity of White-wine, & annoint your face with it at night when you go to bed.

82. *For a blasted face.*

If it be a man, take red Hony-suckles ; if a woman, white Hony-suckles ; press out the juyce of them, and annoint your face with it at night going to bed : This receipt seemeth to me very rational, and



and is therefore most pleasing. I shall explain what here is meant by Honey-suckles; and herein I will imitate *Aristotle* so far, as to tell you,

First, What it is not.

Secondly, What it is.

First, it is not those Honey-suckles which climb up in Hedges, which the Latines call *Caprifolium*, and the English Wood-bine, or Honny-suckles,

Secondly, it is that which is commonly called Meadow-trefoile, by Physicians; in *Sussex* it is commonly called Honey-suckles.

83. *For a face full of red pimples.*

Dissolve Camphire in Vinegar, and mix it, and the Vinegar with Salendine-water, and wash the face with it: this cured a Maid in twenty days that had been troubled with the infirmity half so many years.

84. *Another.*

Take Honey-suckle-leaves, and distil them, and wash your face with the water, (use the same Honey-suckles as I told you before :) this cured a woman that had her face full of white scales; and it so perfectly cured her, that she was never troubled with them again.

85. *Another.*

Also another Woman was troubled with such an infirmity, and if she had been by the fire but a little, and afterwards gone into the Air, her face would have been as full of red spots as it could hold, just like a drunken womans, and she was helped by this following remedy: She took Frankincense, and beat it into powder with Saffron, and cast the powder upon a Chafing-dish of coals, and received the smoak of it with open mouth; and using of it often, was helped.

86. *To take away the marks of the Small Pox.*

Take the juyce of Fennel, heat it luke-warm,  
and



and when the small Pox are well skabbed, anoint the face with it divers times in a day, three or four dayes together.

87. *Another.*

But I am confident the best remedy that is, not onely to prevent the scars of the small Pox, but also to cure deep wounds or Ulcers without a scar, is to anoint the place with Oyl of Eggs.

88. *For a red face.*

Take a handful of Scurvey-grass, and a handful of Tutstan-leaves; boyl them well in Ale, and strain it, and drink a draught of it every morning.

I desire you to be cautious in using this Medicine in giving of it to young people; for Tutstan-leaves consume the seed abundantly, and causeth barrenness.

## CHAP. IX.

89. *Of the Throat, and its Infirmities.*

**T**He vulgar way in curing Diseases of the Throat, which is yet in use with our pittypull Physicians, is *Album-grecum*, Anglicè a Dogsturd, a very sweet Medicine, no less pleasing then profitable.

90. *A Caution.*

Diseases in the throat, most commonly proceed of Rheum descending from the head upon the *trachea arteria*, or winepipe; in such causes there is many times no other cure than first to purge the body of Flegm, and then the head of Rheum, as you were taught in the first Chapter.

91. *For Hoarsness.*

Take of Sugar so much as will fill a common Taster, then put so much rectified Spirit of Wine to it as will just wet it : eat this up at night going to bed : use this three or four times together.

92. *Another.*

If the body be feverish, use the former Medicine as before, only use Oyl of sweet Almonds, or for want of it, the best Sallet-Oyl in stead of Spirit of Wine.

93. *Another.*

Take Penny-royal, and seeth it in running water, and drink a good draught of the decoction at night going to bed, with a little Sugar in it.

94. *For the Quinsie.*

Take notice that bleeding is good in all inflammations, therefore in this.

It were very convenient that a Syrup, and an Oyntment of Orpine were alwayes ready in the house for such occasions ; for I know no better remedy for the Quinsie, than to drink the one, and anoint the throat with the other ; but be sure you do not drink the Oyntment, and anoint your throat with the Syrup.

CHAP. X.

*O the Breast and Lungs, and their Infirmities.*

95. *For a Cough in a young Child.*

**R**ub his Stomach wel when he goes to bed with Oyl of Roses, and then lay a warme cloth to it ; and in three or four nights so using, he will be cured.

96. *For*

96 *For weakness of the Lungs.*

Beat the Lungs of a Fox into a powder, and take a drachm of the powder every night in Rose-water; or if you will, you may take it in the morning.

If any ask the reason why Electuary of Fox-Lungs is not better; tell them, that many Compositions consist of so great variety of Simples, that one of them spoys the operation of the other.

97. *For inflammation of the Lungs.*

Dissolve Sugar-candy in Rose-water, and drink no other drink.

98. *Another.*

Also it is very good to anoint the Breast often with Oyl of Violets, or Oyl of Water Lilies.

99. *For stoppings of the Breast.*

Take the Gum of Cherry-tree, and dissolve it in old Wine, and let the sick drink thereof and it will open his pipes gallantly, better than a fledge and wedges.

100. *Another.*

Take Figs, and slit them, and fill them full of Mustard, then boil them in White-wine, eat the Figs, and drink the wine.

## CHAP. XI.

*Of Womens Breasts, their infirmities and cures.*

101. *For sore Breasts that are broken.*

**T**AKE Wheat-flower, Yolks of Eggs, and the juyce of Plantane; mix it well together, till it be thick like an Ointment; spread it upon a cloth, and apply it to the sore Breast: if there be any holes in the Breast, dip a Tent in this Ointment,



ment, and tent them with it, and lay a Plaister of the same over it.

102. *For sore Breasts.*

Take a handful of Figs, and stamp them well till the Kernels are broken; then temper them with a little fresh grease, and apply them to the Breast as hot as the Patient can endure; it will presently take away the anguish, and if the Breast will break, it will break it, else it will cure it without breaking.

103. *An inward Medicine for a sore Breast.*

Let her drink either the juice or decoction of Vervain: it were fit that syrop were made of it to keep all the year.

104. *For want of Milk.*

Use the former Medicine, it will help that also.

105. *For hardness of the Breasts.*

It is usual to Nurses, when they have newly weaned their children, to have their Breasts grow hard, and the milk to curdle in them; which might easily be prevented by wearing a Dyachilon plaister to them: but suppose it be come already, and cannot be prevented, in such a case take Chickweed, and chop it small, and boil it in Plantane water; put a little Sheeps suet to it, to make it moyst, and apply it for a Poltise to the Breast.

106. *Another.*

Take Populeon, and Linseed Oyl, of each a like quantity, mix them together, and warm them well, then dip a cloth in it, and lay it to the Breast, it will not only take away the hardness of the Breast, but also dry away the milk.

107. *For want of milk.*

Take green Wheat so soon as it begins to change colour, bruise it well, and boyl it in Saller-  
Cy;



Oyl, then strain it, and keep the Oyl till you have need of it to anoint the Breast.

108. *For sore breasts.*

Take Claret-wine, and boyl it with Barley-flour till it be thick like a Poltise; put a little Oyl to it, or Sheeps suet to keep it moyst, and apply it to the Breast.

109. *For want of milk.*

Take Christal, and beat it into very fine powder; take a drachm of it in the morning in a draught of Muskadel.

110. *For inflammation in the breast.*

This is that infirmitie women usually call the Ague in the breast : take the whites of two Eggs, two handfuls of Housleek or Sengreen, which you will; beat them well together, and lay them Plaister-wise to the breast.

111. *To cure sore breasts without a scar.*

Take the yolk of an Egg, and beat it with fresh grease; and when your breasts are almost well, apply that Plaister-wise to them : this will cure not onely the breasts, but also any other wounds without a scar : Oyl of Eggs will do the like.

## CHAP. XII.

*Of the spleen, and its Infirmities.*

112. *A Caution.*

**T**He Spleen is a spongy piece of flesh in the body of man, lying under the Bastard-ribs on the left side; it is the seat of melancholy, and of the retentive faculty throughout the body of a man;

RARE SECRETS.  
IN  
PHYSICK.  
AND  
CHIRURGERY,  
NEVER

Before Exposed to Publick View, and now  
added to this Fifth Edition of this his *Last*  
*Legacy*, Left and Bequeathed  
to his WIFE.

---

PART. VI.

---

COLLECTED BY  
NICHOLAS CULPEPER, *Gent.*  
Student in Astrology and Physick.

---

LONDON,  
Printed for *Nath. Brooks* at the Angell in  
*Cornhil.* 1 6 7 1.

ARE FOLLOWS

th  
d  
st  
for  
W  
be  
po  
wi  
ed  
you  
ler  
big  
it t  
out  
WO



## APHORISMS and RECEIPTS.

1. *To increase Milk in Nurses, and drive away Mice.*

**T**HE Hoofs of the fore-feet of a Cow dried, and taken any way, encrease Milk in Nurses: the smoke of them burnt drives away Mice.

2. *Against pain of the Ears.*

If you fry Earth-worms in Goose-grease, and drop a drop or two of the grease warm (being strained) in your Ear helps the pains thereof, I suppose you were best slit them, and wash them in White-wine first. *Mizaldus*

3. *Against the Spleen.*

The water wherein Smiths quench their Iron, being drank helps the Spleen; So doth eating Capers. *Benardus*

4. *To take off a Wen.*

Unflaked Lime beaten into powder, and mixed with black sope, takes away a Wen, being anointed with it.

5. *To draw forth a Thorn or Splinter.*

If any wood or iron be gotten into the flesh, and you cannot get it out, dip a tent in the juice of Valerian, and put it into the wound, if the wound be big enough; also stamp some of the herb, and bind it to the wound with a cloath; it will not only draw out the thorn or iron, but also speedily help the wound. *Mizaldus*



6. *To preserve Teeth.*

To rub your Teeth and Gums every morning, and after meat too if you please, with Salt, is the best way under the Sun to preserve the Teeth sound and clean, from rotting and aching.

7. *To cure the Gout.*

An excellent cure for the Gout, is to take a young Puppy, all of one colour, if you can get such a one, and cut him into two pieces through the back alive, and lay one side hot to the grieved place, the inner side I mean.

8. *An excellent Balsome.*

Strong Ale'sod till it be thick, is an excellent Salve for Old Aches, and also for Sores.

9. *To try a Pleurisie if it be fixed or not.*

I have found this false, that a man had a Plurisie, yet coughed not.

If any suspect he hath gotten the plurisie, let him hold his breath as long as he can; and if he can let it go without coughing, he hath not the plurisie, otherwise he hath.

10. *To cure a wound well and quickly.*

The coles of a Birch-tree beaten into powder, and put into any Wound or Sore, heals it not only perfectly but also speedily.

11. *To cure those that cannot hold their Water.*

A flead Mouse dryed, and bearen into powder, and given at a time, helps such as cannot hold their Water, or have adiabates, if you do the like three dayes together.

12. *To hasten delivery in Women.*

Mr. Aldus.

Bettony, Penny royal, or sweet-Basil, in powder, given to a Woman in Travel, hasteneth her Delivery. I suppose it were very requisite to observe a time for gathering them.

13. *Against the Plague.*

Take a piece of fine Gold, viz. Angel Gold, (or fr

for want of it, Leaf-Gold, but then you need not take it out a gain ) be put into juice of Lemmons, and after 24 hourstaken out again, and a little Angelica-root in powder, put into the juice, and drunk by such as have the Plague, cures to admiration.

*Collumella.  
Mizaldus.*

I suppose if the time of gathering the Angelica were observed ( for it is an herb of the Sun, it would be far more effectual, as also of the time of putting in the Gold.

14. *To cure a Fellon.*

A little Bay-salt dried and beaten into powder, and mixed with an yolk of an egg, and applyed to a Fellon, (called in *Sussex* an *Andicon*) doth not only speedily cure it, but also draws away the pain and swelling from the parts adjacent, which is usual to such infirmities.

15. *To take away and prevent superfluous hairs.*

Bay-salt finely powdered and mixed with fasting Spittle, and applyed plaister-wise to any place where superfluous hair grows, doth take it away; the like effect hath Pidgeons dung, applyed in like manner.

16. *To stannch blood at the Nose.*

Bleeding at the Nose will be speedily stopped if you write on the Patients Forehead with his own blood, these words, *Consummatus est.*

*Mizaldus.*

17. *To cure the Squinzy.*

The powder of the Tooth of a Boor, mixed with new Oyl of Linseed (for that which is stale stinketh) doth presently cure the Squinancy, if the grieved place be but touched with it with a Feather.

*Mizaldus.*

18. *To whiten Teeth.*

The coles of a burnt Vine in powder, mixed

with Honey, doth make the Teeth which are rubbed with it, as white as Ivory.

9. *To cure Hoarsness.*

Strong Aqua-vitæ mixed so full with sugar, as that you may eat it on a knives point, taken last at night, cures Hoarsness in a short time.

20. *To beautifie the Skin.*

*Mixaldus.*

The dross which is left in pressing out Linseed Oyl, being laid to steep in running water, and the hands washed with it, makes them of a delicate colour; and if you will take the pains to bath your body now and then with it, it will beautifie the Skin.

21. *To take off Freckles and Morpew.*

*Mixaldus.*

The blood of a white Hen smeered all over a face that is full of Freckles, and let alone till it be dry, and then wipe it off clean, taketh away the Freckles and spots.

22. *To cure a Quartane Ague.*

*Mixaldus.*

Cantharides wrapped in a Spiders Web, and hanged over one that hath a Quartane Ague, perfectly cures them.

23. *A wonderful cure for all Agues.*

Also for any Ague, just when the fit comes upon you take half a pint of Sack, and boil it to a quarter of a point, with a little Garlick sliced thin in it, and drink it as warm as you can, it will suddenly cure you to admiration.

24. *To cure the Chollick. Probatum est.*

The decoction of Hollyock, mixed with a little Honey and Butter, doth (being drunk warm) wonderfully ease the Chollick.

25. *To cure the Squinancy infallibly.*

A Plaister made of young Swallows being burnt Nett and all, doth (being applied to the throat,) ease



Cure the Squinancy, and swelling of the Throat: you may make it into a Plaister with Oyl and Wax.

26. *To prevent Cramps and Palseys.*

If you use (when you go to bed) to rub your fingers between your Toes, and then smel to them; you shall find it an excellent prevention both of Cramps and Palseys.

27. *To Cure the Cramp.*

The little bone of the Knee joynt of a Hares hinder Leg, doth presently help the Cramp, if you do but touch the grieved place with it.

28. *To draw out a Thorn, or the like.*

A little piece of the Tongue of a Fox (moistn'd, and made soft in Vinegar, if it be too dry) applied to the place, draws out a Thorn, or any thing else that is gotten deep into the flesh.

29. *To staunch bleeding at the Nose.*

The three cornered Stone which is to be found *Mizaldus* in the hinder part of the head of a Carp, near the neck- being beaten into powder, and little of it snuffed up into the Nose, doth instantly stay the bleeding of it.

30. *To cure a Pin and Web in the Eye.*

The head of a Cat that is black, burned in a new *Mizaldus* Pot or Crucible, and made into fine ashes, and a little of it blown with a quill into an Eye that hath a Web or Pearl growing before it, three times a day, is a most sovereign remedy.

If in the cure the Patient feel any burning in his Eye, then take three or four Oaken leaves and moisten them in water, and lay them to the Eye, and when they have lain a while turn them.

*Mizaldus* affirms that this hath cured such as hath been blind a whole year.



## 31. To draw forth a Thorn, or the like, or to cure the Dropsie.

Snails either with shells or without, being beat with Renner; and applyed Plaister wise, will draw out any Thorn; or any thing else that is gotten never so deep into the flesh;

Also applyed to the Navil of one that hath the Dropsie, it draweth out all the water; but it must not be removed, till it either drop off of it self, or have drawn out all the water.

## 32. To cure the Gout.

*Mizaldus.*

*Albertus magnus.*

It is an herb of  $\text{H}_2$ , and doth it by Sympathy.

The roots of Henbane being stamped, warmed, and applyed to the place, cures the Gout both in the Feet and Knees; the reason is, because it is an herb of *Jupiter*, whose signs  $\text{♃}$  and  $\text{♄}$  rules the Knees and Feet.

## 33. To cure a Rupture.

Take 9 red Snails and put them between two Tile-stones, so as they slide not away; then dry them in an Oven, and give one (beaten into powder) of them every morning fasting in White wine, to one that is bursten, and let him fast an hour after; and if that cure him not, give him one more.

## 34. The vertues of Knot-grasse.

*Mizaldus.*

It is an herb of ☉.

Knot-grass is an herb of the Sun, and cures diseases of the Heart, and Back, Stones, Cholick, Burstness, and resisteth the Pestilence.

## 35. Against hot Rheum in the Eyes.

The paring of an Apple cut somewhat thick and the inside laid to Eyes troubled with a hot Rheum, and bound on at night when they go to bed, gives speedy help contrary to expectation.

36. *For the Gout.*

They say peece-grease, (such as is fryed out of Shoo-makers leather) is an excellent remedy for the Gout.

37. *A cure for the black Jaundies.*

Shell-snails dryed in an Oven, and a drachm of the powder of it taken at a time, doth in nine or ten dayes cure the black Jaundies. It must be taken in Ale in the morning fasting.

38. *To cure an ach or stich.*

Butter, Aqua-vitæ, and Beasts-gall, of each a like quantity mixed together, cures any ach or stich, being anointed with it every morning and evening.

39. *To cure the Falling-sickness.*

The powder of man's bones cure the Falling-sickness, according to *Galen*; but *Gesner* avoucheth he hath done it often with the Skull of a man not buried; which is the most probable, although the other may be true. *Galen.*  
*Gesner.*  
\* *cranium humanum.*

40. *Against Bruises.*

The powder of Stone-pitch given in Smal-bear two or three mornings together, is a notable remedy for such as are bruised; and cheap enough too.

41. *A receipt for the Kings Evil.*

The root of Vervain hanged about the neck of one that hath the Kings-evil, gives a strange and unheard of cure.

The reason is, because it is an herb of *Venus*, *Scribonius* and *♄* is her house for the time of gathering this *Largus.* and other herbs, I refer you to other Treatises when the matter is particularly handled.

42. *For the Cholick.*

Tender horns of Bucks whilst they be cover'd with a thin hairy skin, being sliced and put into a new pot

pot well covered, and so dried in an oven that they may be beaten into powder, and some of it given in wine with pepper and myrrh, give speedy ease for the Chollick.

43. *For pain in the Bladder and Cods.*

Pains of the bladder and cods, as also of the collick must be cured, if you apply to it Pellitory of the wall bruised,

44. *A Receipt for the Guts, as also to break the Stone in the reins or bladder.*

*Ælius.  
Egenera:  
Mizaldus.  
and experience.*

A Hedge Sparrow is of a notable vertue for the Guts detraacted, and the feathers taken off, and the body either kept in salt, or converted into mummy and eaten; (the birds I mean, (not the guts and feathers) it will break the Stone either in reins and bladder, and bring it forth.

45. *Against redness of Face.*

The Roots of white Lillies sod in water; the face washed with the water, takes away the redness thereof.

46. *For a weak stomach.*

*Mizaldus.  
Galen.*

A green Jasper hung about the neck of one that hath a weak stomach, so that it touch the skin near the region of the mouth of the stomach, doth wonderfully strengthen it,

47. *Against Scalds and Scabs.*

If you stamp Harriffe a little, and lay it a soak in spring-water 24 hours, and then wash any scald or scabby place with it quickly heals it.

48. *To provoke it.*

If you boil parsley and timewell in white-wine, and in a draught of it put a spoonful of white-sope (I suppose Castle-sope) scraped small; and this being drunk up causeth a man speedily to make water, and is a pretious remedy for the stone.



49. An excellent ointment for Ulcers and Fistula's.

Carduus Benedicus stamped and boiled with Arnoldus barrows grease, wine, and wheat-flower, to an ointment; this is soveraign, that it cures all ulcers, sores, and fistulaes, yea though the bones be bare.

50. To cure the pain of the Gout.

Arnoldus saith, a handful of Mugwort stamped and boiled in sweet-sallet-oyl, till the juice be consumed, makes an oyl which gives speedy ease to the Gout.

51. To stanch the bleeding of the Nose.

If your Nose bleed on the right-side, crush the little-finger of the right-hand; if on the left-side, of the left-hand, and it will cease. *Mixaldus.*

52. To prevent the falling sickness.

If you give ten grains of red-coral in powder to a child in breast-milk for the first sustenance it takes, it will never be troubled with the falling-sickness; it seems by this it mightily strengthens the brain. *Arnoldus. de villanova.*

53. To cure the Gout.

There is an Hearb called speargrass, take it and stamp it, and fill a Walnut-shel full of it being stamped, and apply it to the place pained with the Gout, bind it on, and within 6 or 8 hours it will draw a blister, which cut and let out the water, and keep a cole-wort leafe to it till the malady be remedied; this have been known to cure this disease in such as have been troubled with it 20 years.

54. To destroy Mothes.

Boil the leaves of oyle till half be consumed, with which anoint the bottom corners and feet of a chest or press you put cloaths in, and no Mothes will trouble them; but you were best let it be dry before you put the cloaths in. *Varro. Cato.*



Mithridates.

55. *Against Poyson, Pestilence and Ptisick.*

Take a handful of green Rue, gathered in the hour of the ☉ he being strong, ten figs, as many walnuts, an ounce of Juniper-berries; beat all these together with a little bay-salt, and take the quantity of a hazel-nut every morning, it defends the body from pestilence, poyson, or any sickness, even to extreme old age; *Mithridates* was the Author of it, and therefore let him have the credit of it besides, with this onely, and the blessing of God upon it, I have cured such of the Ptisick or Consumption of the Lungs, that have been so weak they could not walk about the Chamber without leaning.

56. *To make Fat people lean.*

Some men are so gross and fat that they can hardly walk or do any business; let such eat 3 or 4 cloves of Garlick every morning with bread and butter, and fast 2 hours after it; and let their drink be water, wherein Fennel hath been boiled, it will in a very small time ease them.

57. *To cure the bloody flux.*

That which is shorn from skarlet, being well dried, and dried in an Oven or other wayes, that it may be beaten in powder, and half a spoonful of the powder given at a time in red wine, will quickly cure the bloody flux.

58. *To strengthen Memory.*

If you anoynt the Temples where the arterie pass, once a month with the Gall of a Partridge, it mightily strengthens the memory.

59. *An Amulet against Poyson of all sorts.*

A Saphire tyed about the neck, so as it touch the region of the heart, preserves the bearer from poison and the plague, and abateth the heat in feavers and agues.

60. *Against dulness and forgetfulness.*

The soles of the feet rubbed with good mustard helps

Simeon bethi.

Rhazas Albertus.

helps forgetfulness, and quickens the motion. A Petrus His-  
man might draw hence, that forgetful persons are *panus*.  
usually dull.

61. *To cure the Tooth-ach.*

Seeth Ivy-berries in Vinegar, and sup your  
mouth full of it as hot as you can, and when it is  
cold spitt it out again; and take another sup, and  
do likewise, a few such sups will cure the pain of the  
teeth.

62. *Another for the same.*

Also if you put a little spirit of Vitriol in the  
pained tooth, which you may get done by a little  
lint tyed to the top of a bodkin or wire, it works  
the same effects; but be sure you take not oil of  
Vitriol instead of the spirit, for if you do you will  
make foul work.

63. *To cure lame Joynts.*

Aqua-composita mixed with a little oil of Roses  
helps lame Joynts, but let them be well rubbed  
before with warm cloaths, and then anointed with it.

64. *Another for the same.*

The like effects hath Harts-horn being boiled to  
a jelly in Sack.

65. *To preserve health in body and mind.*

Take of Cinnamon three drachms, Mastich and  
Pomgranat-rinds, of each one drachm, Galingall  
half a drachm; make all these being in fine pow-  
der into an Electuary with clarified honey, and ta-  
king the quantity of a hazell-nut of it every morn-  
ing fasting, doth not only cause a good stomach,  
but also good digestion, and resisteth the breeding  
of ill humors, thereby preserving the body in  
health, and the mind in vigor.

66. *To cure Agues.*

Cinkfoil is an hearb of  $\mathfrak{u}$ , it strengthens the Li-  
ver, and cures (being given in powder) all Agues.

I do

I do not intend here to treat of Hearbs about the time of gathering them, but reserve that to a Treatise by it self.

67. *To prevent Cold.*

M. Aldus.

Whosoever anointeth any part of the body with the grease of a Wolf, shall not be hurt by cold on that part.

68. *To cause deliverance in Women.*

Tortula.  
Gilbertus.

Vervain stamped and strained in Wine gives speedy deliverance to a Woman in travel if she drink it.

69. *Another for the same.*

The like effects hath sweet Bezil in powder, and also Cinnamon.

70. *To cure the Fin and Web.*

Take 9 Hog-lice, we call them Wood-lice in Suffex, stamp them with a little juice of Bettony, strain it, and drink it warm in the morning; the doing so three mornings together cures the Web in the Eye.

71. *To cure a sore Throat.*

Jews ears (a thing that grows upon Elder-trees) being either steeped or boiled in Ale helps sore Throats, if you drink the Ale.

72. *To break the Stone.*

The middle rind of a Cherry-tree stamped and strained, and the juice mixed with a little white-wine and warmed, and drunk breaks the Stone, and avoids the gravel.

73. *Another for the same.*

The like effects hath the Gum of a Cherry-tree mixed in like manner, as also the juice of Cammomele.

74. *To cure the Falling-sickness.*

Petrus His-  
palus.

Cut a Frog through the midst of the back with



with a knife, and take out the Liver, which wrap in a Colewort-leaf and burn it in a new crucible well stopped; the ashes given to one that hath the Falling-sickness cures them; if once doth not the deed, use it oftner.

75. *To stop bleeding at the Nose.*

*Petrus Hispanus.*

Let one that bleedeth at the Nose chew the root of nettles in his mouth, but swallow it not down and the blood will stop.

76. *To help digestion, and expel wind.*

Carroway-comfits once dipt in sugar being eaten, half a spoonful after meat and a spoonful in the morning fasting, doth not onely help those that are troubled with wind, but causeth a good digestion; the better you chew them, the better it is.

77. *To cure Aches.*

The juice of Arsmart mingled with half the quantity of Aqua-vitæ takes away aches being appointed with it.

78. *Against the Stone.*

Seeth a handful of Holly-berries in a pint of Ale till half the Ale be consumed, then strain and put a piece of butter to it; take five or six spoonfuls of it at a time, is an excellent remedy for the Stone.

79. *Against the Gout.*

Walwort is an excellent remedy for the Gout, *Mixaldea* either applyed outwardly in Oyles and Ointments, and inwardly in Syrups and Electuaries.

80. *For lame limbs.*

Sallet-Oyle, Aqua-vitæ, Oyle of Exceter, and a Bullocks gall, of each a like quantity mixed together, make an excellent Ointment for lame limbes.



81. *To stanch Blood.*

Primrose-leaves stamped, and layed to any part that bleedeth, stayeth the blood.

82. *A rare Experience to kill Tetters.*

Take black Sope, and mix it with almost as much beaten Ginger; this by anointing with it kills any Tetter or Ring-worms, be it never so desperate.

83. *To cure lame Limbs.*

Dr. Owen.

It is wonderful beneficial to lame Members to bathe them in the decoction of Rew and Rosemary, and then wrap them in a Lambs skin, the woolly-side inmost.

84. *Ararity against the Gout.*

Take oil of Bayes, Aqua-vitæ, juice of Sage, Vinegar, Mustard, and Beast's gall, of each a like quantity, put them up into a bladder that is far too bigg to hold them, tye them up close, then chafe them up and down with your hands an hour and half together; then have you as good an Ointment for the Gout as the World can afford.

85. *To cause sleep and waking.*

Take juice of Henbane, Lettice, Plantane, Poppy, Mandrague-leaves, Ivy, and Mulberry-leaves, Hemlock, Opium, Ivy-berries in powder, of each a like quantity, mix them well together, then put a sponge into them, and let it drink them all up, dry the sponge in the ☉; and when you would have any body sleep, lay the sponge at his Nose, and he will quickly sleep; and when you would have him wake, dip another sponge in Vinegar, and hold it to his Nose, and he will wake as soon.

86. *To provoke a stool.*

Seeth Mollows and red Nettles together, and let him that cannot go to stool sit over it when it is hot.

man ; it causeth mirth and laughing, sadness and sighing, according as it is well or ill affected.

113. *Another.*

The Spleen is seldom afflicted, but it stirs up wind in the body extreamly, because it lies in so great a cavity.

114. *Another.*

There is a great harmony between the Liver and the Spleen, insomuch that the one is never afflicted, but it afflicts the other in one measure or another ; neither is any thing medicinal for the one, but in one measure or another it helps the other.

115. *For hardness of the Spleen.*

Take the Marrow of Beef, and mix it well with the like quantity of Oyl of bitter Almonds; warm it well, and anoint your left side with it.

116. *For the Spleen.*

Take the inner rind of an Ash-tree; bruise it, and boil it well in White-wine, and drink a draught of it every morning : Tamaris-bark, and Caper-roots, work the same effect, used in the same manner.

117. *Another.*

In the morning wash your left side with your own water.

118. *Another.*

Take the roots of Nettles, stamp them well, and boyl them well in Vinegar to a poltise, and apply it warm to the left side.

119. *For the Spleen over-burthened.*

In this case many times you have no other remedy than to let blood in the Fundament with Horse-leaches.

120. *For the spleen.*

My own most approved remedies for the Spleen, are these : if the Spleen be afflicted with cold, rub

your left side every morning when you rise with your hand, then anoint it with Oyntment of Tobacco, and lay a Tobacco-leaf moistned with the same oyntment by the region of the Spleen.

121. *Another.*

Apply a Plaister of Ammoniacum to the region of the Spleen: if you can, get that Plaister which is called *Emplastrum Ammonicum cum scicuta*; it is one of the best remedies in the world being applied to the region of the Spleen.

122. *Another.*

If a man live in the Countrey where these cannot be gotten, let him get a handful of Hemlock, and warm it very hot, and apply it to his side: it were fitting an oyntment of it were made, and kept in the house for such occasions: for Hemlock being an herb of Saturn, is an excellent sympaticol remedy for the Spleen.

123. *Caution.*

When you apply any Plaisters to the region of the Spleen, cut them as near as you can to the same form the Spleen is of, so will they work their effects more effectually and speedily.

124. *Another.*

Let such as are troubled with the Spleen, forbear much drinking Wine; for that makes the vapours of the Spleen thin, and sends them up to the Brain pell mell, whereby corrupting the senses, they make many men think they see the things they see not, and hear the things they hear not. These vapours of the Spleen I am perswaded is the reason why mad and fantastical people think they see Visions; many thinking they are inspired with the Spirit of God, when it is nothing else but a few poysonous vapours of the Spleen.



## CHAP. XIII.

*Of the Stomach, and its Infirmities.*

125. *A Caution.*

**I**Nfirmities of the Stomach usually proceed from surfeiting.

126. *Another.*

Let such as have weak Stomachs, avoid all sweet things; as Honey, Sugar, and the like; Milk, Cheese, and all fat Meat: let him not eat till he is hungry, nor drink before he is a dry: let him avoyd anger, sadness, much travel, and all fryed meats; let him not vomit by any meanes, nor eat when he is hot.

127. *For pain in the Stomach.*

Take a slice of bread of a pretty thickness, and toast it very hot; then dip it in Oyl of Camomel, or Oyl of Spike, which is next hand; then wrap it in a linnen cloth, and apply it to the part pained.

128 *For moysture of the Stomach.*

Take a drachm of Galanga in powder every morning in a draught of what Wine you love best.

129. *For heat of the Stomach.*

Swallow four or five grains of Mastlick every night going to bed,

130. *For windiness in the Stomach.*

Take a scruple of Castoreum every morning in good Wine; 'tis an excellet remedy for windiness in the Stomch; better indeed for women than it is for men, to put half a dozen, or ten drops in a draught of Beer after their meat.



131. *For a stinking breath caused by the Stomach.*

Take three ounces of Cummin-seeds, bruise them well; and boyl them in a gallon of Sack till half be consumed: Drink a draught of it (being strained) first at morning, and last at night.

132. *For one that vomits up his Victuals.*

Take Quinces, the cores and rinds being taken away, boyl them in strong Vinegar till they be soft; then beat them in a Morter, and make them into a Poulitise, with a little Mustard-seed, and Cloves beaten into powder; spread this upon a cloth, and apply it warm to the Region of the Stomach. This in three or four times doing, will cure.

133. *To stay vomiting.*

Take a toast, and bake it very well, then dip it in Vinegar; chew a little of it in your mouth whilst it is hot, and hold the rest to your Nose, and it will close the mouth of your stomach,

134. *For a weak Stomach.*

Take an ounce of Cinamon, half an ounce of Galangi, and as much Ginger; beat them into powder; and with syrup of Hyssop make them up into an Electuary; of which take the quantity of a Nutmeg every morning, fasting an hour or two after it: if you cannot get syrup of Hyssop, put half an ounce of Hyssop in powder in it, and make it up with clarified Honey.

135. *For a stinking breath caused by the Stomach.*

Take the tops of Rose-mary, boyl them in wine, and drink a draught of the decoction, first at morning, and last at night.

136. *For a watry Stomach.*

Take an Oaken-leaf, and lay it upon your tongue, with the rough side downward; shut your mouth close, & it will draw the water from your Stomach.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XIV.

*Of the Liver, and its Infirmities.*137. *A Cautiō.*

**I**F the Liver be too hot, it usually proceedeth from too much blood, and is known by redness of Urine, the Pulse is swift, the Veins great and full, his spittle, mouth, and tongue, seem sweeter than they use to be: the cure is letting blood in the right Arm.

138. *To cause the Liver well to digest.*

Take Oyl of Wormwood, and so much Mastick in powder as wil make it into a Paltise, lay it warm to your right side.

139. *For heat of the Liver.*

Take Liver-wort, Cinkfoyle, Endive, Succory, Borrage, and Bugloss, of each equal quantities; boyl them in clarified Whey, and drink no other drink.

140. *Another.*

Take of Sow-thistles, Dandelion, and Ribwort, of equal quantities; either boyl them in clarified Whey, or else in fair Water; or if you will, you may tun them up in small Beer, and drink no other drink.

141. *Stoppages for the Liver.*

Take Ivy-berries, Agrimony, Harts tongue, Liver-wort, and the bark of Ash-tree, of all these a like quantity, Polypodium the double quantity of any one of them; bruise them well, and either tun them up in small Beer, or else make a decoction of them in Water: then make the de-

coction into a syrup with Sugar, to keep for your use.

142. *A Caution.*

If the Liver be stopped, the Face will swell, and you shall be as sure to have a pain in your right side, as though you had it there already.

143. *For stoppage of the Liver.*

Use Garden-thyme in all your drinks and broaths, it will prevent stoppages before they come, and cure them after they are come.

144. *For the Liver.*

The Liver of a Hare dried, and beaten into powder, cures all the diseases of the Liver of Man.

145. *Gently to cleanse and cool the Liver.*

Take of Liver-wort, Fumitory, and Harts-tongue, of each equal quantities; clarify them in Whey, and drink a pint of it every morning, fasting two or three hours after.

## CHAP. XV.

### *Of the Sides, and their Infirmities.*

1. 6. *A Caution.*

**I**F you have a pain in your side, & question whether it be a Plurisie or not, take Wormwood, and heat it hot against the fire, between two Tile-stones; and when it is very hot, sprinkle it with a little Muskadel; then put in a linnen cloth, and lay it hot to your side: if it be only wind, it will take it away in two hours; but if it be the Plurisie, it will increase the pain; und then you must seek other remedies.



147. *For wind in the Side.*

Take the leaves of Holly, and dry them well, and beat them to powder: take two drachms of it in wine, and it will give thee ease immediately.

148. *For a Stich in the Side.*

Take the Urine of him that is ill, and boyl Warmood and Cummin-seeds, bruised very well in it, and anoint the sides going to bed with the Liquor.

149. *Another.*

Anoint thy self going to bed, with Oyl of Bays.

150. *For a Stich in the left Side.*

Take a quantity of Cummin-seeds, and bruise them very well, and infuse them in Malmesey or Muskadel, three or four hours; then fry them in a pan till they be pretty thick; put it in a linnen bag, and lay it to your side.

## CHAP. XVI.

*Of the Heart, and its Infirmities.*

151. *For a trembling of the Heart without a Fever.*

Take the Maw of an old Cock, dry it, and beat it into powder, and take a drachm of the powder of it in the morning in Wine.

152. *Another.*

Take red Corral, and beat it into very fine powder, and take a scruple of it first in the morning, and last at night, in Borrage-water.

153. *For fatness about the Heart.*

Take the juyce of Fennel, and clarify it, and  
Q 4 make



make a syrop of it with Honey, and toke an ounce of it morning and evening.

154. *For gnawing about the Hart.*

Take Sage leaves, and Yarrow; beat them, and press out the juyce; clarifie it, and drink a spoonful of it in every drought of Beer you drink.

155. *A Caution.*

Things which strengthen the heart, are Saffron, Rue, Borrage, Bugloss, Hart-horn, Mustard, red Roses, Violets, Mace, good Wine, and Spirits of Wine moderately taken.

156. *For Heart-qualmes.*

Take half a drachm of Pyony roots in powder every morning, or a spoonful of syrop of Pyonyes, and to be sure you shall be free from it all that day.

## CHAP. XVII.

*Of the Belly, and its Infirmities.*

157. *For a hard Belly without pain.*

**T**ake Mallows and Mercury, and stamp them together, (the herb Mercury I mean, not Quicksilver) and make a plaister thereof, and lay it to the Navil.

158. *Another.*

Take Rew, and press the juyce out; clarifie it: drink a spoonful of it in all the drink you drink.

159. *For a hard Belly that is sore.*

Beat Penny-royal, and mix a little Ginger with it in powder, and apply it Plaister-wise to the Belly.

160. *For*

160. *For a Bastard Cholick.*

Take Wormwood, Rew, Mother-wort, Lavender-Cotton; stamp them, then mix the Gall of an Ox with it warmed, and apply Plaister-wise to the Belly.

CHAP. XIII.

*Of the Navil, and its Infirmities.*

161. *For the swelling of the Navil,*

**T**Ake Cows-dung, and dry it to powder; Barley-flour, and Bean-flower, of each a like quantity; a little Cummin-seeds, beaten into powder; make it up into a plaister with juyce of Knot-grass; and apply it to the Navil: if it happen at such a time of the year when juyce of Knot-grass cannot be gotten, and the leaves of Knot-grass in powder, in equal proportion to the rest, and make it up into a plaister, with Ale boyled to the height.

162. *Another.*

Take Cows-dung, and boyl it in the milk of the same Cow into a plaister, and apply it to the Navil.

163. *For a child's Navil that is sore with crying.*

Take a little Bean-flower, and the Ashes of fine Clouts burnt; temper them with red Wine and Honey, and lay it to the sore.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XIX.

*Of the Back, and its Infirmities.*

*164. For weakness of the Back.*

**T**Ake Barley-flower, and Bean-flower of each equal quantities; make it up into a Plaister with the Oyl of Roses, and the yolk of an Egg, and apply it to your back.

*165. Another.*

Take Rice in fine powder, and Wheat-flower, of each equal quantities; temper it with Claret-Wine and Sugar, the powder of Clary and Nutmeg; make it into a Cake with fresh Butter and bake it; and eat no other Breakfast but it, being baked for some dayes.

*166. For a pain in the Back.*

Take fresh Cow-dung, and fry it in Vinegar, and apply it Plaister-wise to the back: you little think how soon it will give you ease.

*167. For heat in the Back.*

Boyl the leaves of Willow-trees in water till they be as thick as a Poltise; apply them to the Reins of the back as hot as you can endure it: if it be at such a time of the year when Willows have no leaves, use the inner rind of the Tree in like manner: and in four or five times dressing, it will heal you.

CHAP

## CHAP. XX.

*Of the Fundament, and its Infirmities.*

168. *For falling out of the Fundament.*

**B**Eware of taknig cold in that place : be sure to keep your Buttocks warm : beware of costiveness : sit not upon cold earth nor stones.

169. *For the Fig in Fundament.*

This impediment is an Imposthumation, or lump of flesh growing in the right Gut, proceeding of melancholly humours descending thither, and therefore first of all purge melancholy, either with confection of Hamech, or Pills of Lapis-Lazuli.

170. *Another.*

Take the powder of a Dogs head burnt, mix it with juyce of Pimpernel, and make long Tents of it, and put it up the Fundament.

171. *For falling out of the Fundament.*

Take Bay leaves, and boyl them well in water ; put the water in an Earthen Pot, and sit over it as hot as you can endure, that the fume of the water may go up into your Fundament ; so may you put it up with your Fingers by little and little : and when you have gotten it up, sit down with your bare breech upon an Oaken board, made as hot with the fire as you can suffer it : this will heal you.

172. *Another.*

Take red Nettles, and bruise them very well ;  
boyl



boyl them well in white-wine, in an earthen pot, till half the wine be consumed; let him drink this liquor first at morning, and last at night, and lay Hearbs to his Fundament as hot as you can suffer it.

## CHAP. XXI.

### *Of the Thighes, and their Infirmities.*

#### 173. *For stiffness of the Thighs.*

**T**AKE brook-lime, Hoarhound, and St. Johns wort; Tallow, Hogs-grease, and Horse-turd, boyl them all well together; then strain them out, and keep the Oyntment for your use.

#### 174. *For aching of the Bones of the Thighs.*

Take a pint of White-wine, and the Gall of an Ox: boyl them to a plaister with a few crumbs of bread; spread it upon a cloth, and lay it to the grieved place.

#### 175. *To knit the Sinewes and Veins of the Thighs.*

Take great Earth-worms, and beat them all to mash, and add unto them a little Mastick in powder, then boyl them in Oyl till it be thick like a Salve; then spread it upon a cloth, and lay it to the grieved place: let it lie on nine dayes, and by that time all will be well.

#### 176. *For Swelling of the Thighs.*

Take Hens dung; or Pigeons dung, (Pigeons dung is the best by far without any dispute of the story)

Story ) Sheeps tallow, Smallage, and Chick-weed; beat them all together: then fry them well in Lees of Muskadel: if you cannot get the Lees, use Muskadel it self, and apply it, being fryed as hot as you can endure it to the place.

177. *For Sinews that are shrunk in Thighs, or elsewhere.*

Anoint the place with ointment of Swallowes; it is thus made: Take young Swallows out of their nests, by number twelve; Rosemary-tops, Bay-leaves, Lavinder-tops, Strawberry-leaves, of each a handful, cut off the long feathers of the Swallows wings and tails, and put them in a stone-Morter, and lay the Herbs upon them, and beat them all to pieces, Guts, Feathers, Bones and all then mix them with thre pound of Hogs-grease; set it in the Sun a Moneth together; then boyl it up, strain it, and keep the Oyniment for your use.

## CHAP. XXII.

*Of the Knees, and their Infirmities.*

178. *For Ach, or Swelling in the Knees.*

**T**Ake Rew and Lovage, and stamp them, and mix a little Honey with them, and apply it to the Knees.

179. *For an Ach, coming of an old Bruise.*

Take a Pottle of running water, and a pint of Bay-

Bay-salt; boyl them together till half be consumed; then make it thick with Bran, and lay it to the Knee.

180. *Another.*

Make an Oyntment with juyce of Night-shade, and *May-Butter*, to anoint your Knee with.

181. *For the Knees.*

The best remedy (in my opinion) is this: Take the bones of Goats Knees, and beat them to powder; and take a drachm of the powder every morning in Goats Milk, if you can get it, if not, in what liquor you will; and wrap a part of the skin of a Goat about your Knee.

## CHAP. XXIII.

### *Of the Legs and Feet, and their Infirmities.*

182. *For Swelling in the Legs.*

**T**AKE Worm-wood, Southern-wood and Rew, of each equal quantities; stamp them together, and fry them with Honey till they begin to wax dry; then apply it as hot as you can endure it, either to your swelled Legs or Hands.

183. *For a Leg that is swelled, and will pit after touching.*

Take Chick-weed and Pellitory of the Wall, of each a handful; Sheeps Tallow one pound; Tartar beaten, two ounces; boyl these in M. ky

Part.V. *his Physical, Chirurgical Remains.* 241  
till they be soft like a Poltise, and apply it to  
the Leg.

184. *Another.*

And this pleaseth me much better: Take a  
Quart of red Wine, and boyl it to a Poltise with  
crums of Rye-bread, and apply it to your Leg as  
hot as you can endure it: in four times dressing  
this will help you.

185. *For ach in the Bones, in the Leggs  
or Arms.*

Take a quarter of a pound of Dill-seed, beat it  
into powder, and boyl it in a quart of good White-  
wine; boyl it till half be wasted away; then put  
it to a pint of good Sallet-Oyl, boyl it again till  
all the Wine be consumed; then strain out the Oyl,  
and keep it as a Sovereign remedy for the premises.

186. *For a red Swelling in the Leg or  
Arm.*

Take Oatmeal, and boyl it in Milk; and when  
it hath boyled a good while, add to it a handfull of  
Mallows, and a handfull of Housleek, or Sengreen  
chopped small together, with some Sheeps Suet  
chopped small; boyl it to a Poltise, and apply it to  
the sore place: if it be ready to break, it will break  
it; if not, it will cure it without breaking.

187. *For a Corn on the Toe.*

Take a black Snail, and roast him well in a  
white wet cloth; bruise him, and lay him hot to  
the



the Corn, and it will take it away in a very short time.

188. *To make a Nail grow where it is wanting.*

Take Cinkfoyle, and bruise it with any fresh grease, and apply it to the place where the Nail is wanting, and it will make another grow.

---

RARE

---

87. *To break the Stone.*

The roots of red Nettles being drunk in powder, a spoonfull at a time, breaks the Stone.

88. *To cure Head-ache.*

A Combe made of the right horn of a Ram cures the Head-ach, if it lye on the right side of the Head being combed with it, of the left horn for the left side.

89. *To cure the Quinzy.*

Dip a Silk-thread in the blood of a Mouse, and let the party swallow it down that is troubled with the Squinancy, pain or swelling in the Throat, and it will cures him,

90. *A wonderful cure for the Plurisy.*

For a Plurisy, or in any other part of the body, *Enph. Ben.* any pain, this do : Take of Dialthea 2 ounces, and *Vicia*, warm it, and anoint the grieved place with it; then take Cumminseeds finely powdered and strew upon the anointed place, then heat a Colewort-leaf very hot upon coals, and wrap the place so used as before, binding it fast, and you shall soon see the wonderful effects.

91. *To cure Imposthumes.*

Scabious in powder drunk, (a drachm at a time, *Ant. Musa.* in small Ale every morning) cures Imposthums.

92. *To cure the Falling-sicknes.*

Peony is an hearb of the ☽, the root of it cures the Falling-sickness.

93. *To cure the Head-ach.*

The juyce of Ground-ivy snuffed up into the Nose purgeth the head mightily, and takes away the paines thereof, though of never so long continuance.

94. *To kill Worms.*

The Gall of an Oxe, and so much flower of  
S Lupines

Lupines as will thicken it into a Plaister, kills the Wormes,

95. *A great Cordial and Cleanser.*

*Lemnius.*

It red hot Gold be quenched in Wine, and the Wine drunk it cheares the Vitals, cures the Plague, outwardly used it takes away spots, and leprosie. A costly Medicine.

96. *To break the Stone.*

*Mz Idus.*

The water that drops out of a Vine being drunk with white wine, breaks and expells the Stone in the Reins.

97. *Against all Fluxes of the Belly.*

*Misc.*

Pigeons-dung stamped with vinegar, and applyed plaister-wise to the Navil, stoppeth presently all Fluxes of the Belly.

98. *A rare experiment against the Gripping of the Guts.*

Carduus Bened ctus seeds stamped, and taken, easeth pains, aches, and stiches in the sides, as also griping of the belly and guts,

99. *To cure Worms.*

If any be troubled with Stomach-worms let him hold a piece of a Honey-combe in his mouth, and the Worms will come out to the honey.

100. *A rare Cordial.*

Sirrup of Borrage and Bugloss resist Melancholly, and cause light hearts, taking away grief and passions thereof.



## APHORISMS and RECEIPTS.

### 1. *To cure the Swine-pox.*

**T**He roots of Sorrel hung about their necks that have the Swine pox doth wonderfully help them.

*Mixaldus.*

### 2. *To cure the Dropfie.*

Bryony roots boyled in water; and the water drunk, helps the Droplie.

### 3. *For weak Eyes.*

Eye-bright is an hearb of ☉, and is a wonderfull strengthner of the Eyes used any way, either outwardly or inwardly, both the leaves, stalks and flowers, for it is an hearb appropriated to them.

### 4. *To know a Dropfie, whether hot or cold.*

You may easily know whether a Dropfie be hot or cold, thus: If it begins below and swells upwards it is hot, because the nature of Heat is to ascend; but if it swells downwards it is cold because it is the nature of Cold to descend.

### 5. *To cure those that cannot hold their Urine.*

Dry a Bullocks, Sheeps, or Goats bladder, and beat it into powder, and give a drachm of it in water, viniger, or any convenient liquor to such as cannot hold their water, or use to piss a bed, and it will help them; give it at night or morning, as you please.

*Galen.*



## 6. To purge the Head.

Rub a green Marigold leaf between your fingers, and put it up into your Nose, and it will draw away abundance of humours, and helps Rheum anoying the Head.

## 7. To cure a Dropsie.

The roots of Elder trees sod in water, and the decoction drunk for common drink, cures the Dropsie.

## 8. To cure any Gout.

Garlick and Housleek, of each a like quantity, stamped and applyed plaister-wise to the place will help the Gout, be it hot or cold.

## 9. To cure the Spleen.

B nevinus

White-wine, wherein the ends of a pair of tongs have been quenched (being before heat red hot) 6 or 7 times. being drunk divers times, doth help such as have grieved, swell'd, or diseased Spleen.

## 10. An Aphorism for to know recovery from Sicknes.

Mizaldus

It is a signe of health in a sickness, when the Cods begin to itch; but then take heed of venerious acts, lest they pay for their pleasure.

## 11. To cure the Dropsie.

The Decoction of Walwort, either in Wine or water, doth admirably (being drunk) help the Dropsie.

## 12. To cure Carbunkles and Sores.

Arnoldus.  
de villa  
nova.

Coriander-seed beaten into powder, and mixed with Honey, and applyed plaister-wise, either to Carbunkles or Sores, helps them.

## 13. To cure the Stone and Dropsie.

Mizaldus

The Berries of Winter Cherries stamped, and the juyce taken out and dryed, helps both Stone and Dropsie; but you must take it inwardly.

## 14. Against

14. *Against Head-ach.*

Elder-leaves made hot between two Tile-stones, and applyed to the Forehead and Temples, ease the pains of the Head.

15. *To cure Deafness, and Imposthumes of the Ears.*

Take the budds, leaves, or inner rind of an Elder-tree, beat it, and drop a drop or two of the juice thereof into the Ear; it cures not only Imposthumes there, but also Deafness.

16. *To cure the Falling-sickness.*

The Brains of a Weazel dryed and drunk in Vinegar, cures the Falling-sickness.

*Mizaldus.*

17. *Against Rheum.*

Many men are troubled with watry Stomachs, much thin fresh water coming out of their mouths towards morning; it usually comes with a proneness to vomit, (the Vulgar call it water-springs) for such, or any other Rheum whatsoever that molesteth your body, take this most excellent, though cheap Medicine.

Take a little stick, and tye some old Oaken-leaves at the end of it, and cut them pretty round, then put them into your mouth, as far as you can well suffer it, and hold the stick fast between your teeth, and aboundance of Rheum will come out of your mouth; hold your mouth over a Porringer, and you may see how much. Then wash the leaves in water, and put them in again to your mouth; do so as often as you think fit: if you do so before meat, it will help your digestion.

18. *To cure the black Jaundies.*

Earth-worms slit and washed well in White-wine, and dryed, and beaten into powder, and a spoonful of them taken in any Lliquor in the morning

264 [Culpeper's last Aphorismes, and Part VI.  
fasting, in a little time cureth the black Jaundies.

19. *A rare secret against Lice.*

Olibanum, mixed with as much Barrows-grease, (beat the Olibanum first in powder) and boyled together, make an Oyntment which will kill the Lice in Childrens heads; and such as are subj: & to breed them, will never breed them after: a Medicine cheap, safe, and sure, which breeds no annoyance to the brain.

20. *To cure the Blinde.*

*Petrus Hispanus.*

Tormentile boyled in Wine, and the Wine drunk for ordinary drink; & the Hearb it self, that was boyled, being applyed Plaster wise to the Eyes at night, helpeth such as are so blind they cannot see at all.

21. *Against Fits of the Mother.*

Briony roots boyled in White wine, and a draught of the Wine drunk every night going to bed, helps such as have the Fits of the Mother.

22. *To Purge the Head.*

*Andr. Matthiolus.*

The juyce of Cole worts snuffed up the Nose, purgeth the Head marvellously, and taketh away the pains thereof, though of never so long continuance.

23. *To help Children that breed teeth.*

*Mixaldus.*

The Gums of young Children being rubbed often with the brains of a Haire or Coney, their Teeth will cut easily.

24. *To purge the Head.*

Fine Aloes, boyled well with the juyce of Coleworts, and made into Pills; a scruple being taken at a time at night going to bed, doth gallantly purge the head, and ease the pains thereof.



25. *To cure the Gout.*

Take a good handful of Agrismart, wrap it up in a Bar-leaf, and rake it up being so wrapped, first in cold ashes; then cover those cold ashes with hot embers, those hot embers with hot coals, and let it roast; and apply it being well roasted to the place grieved with the Gout; change it morning and evening, and in thre dayes you shall see the wonderful effects.

26. *A rare Cordial.*

If you beat a plate of Gold very thin when the *Hermes.*  
 ☉ is in ♉, ♊ and ☾ in good aspect and fortunate, *Arnoldus*  
 it will do wonders for being layed to the seame of *de villa*  
 the head, strengthens the brain, and helps the in- *nova.*  
 firmities thereof; being hanged against the Region  
 of the heart, it helps diseases thereof, Faintings,  
 Swoonings, &c. and causeth gladness; being hang-  
 ed to the back, it cools and strengthens the Reins,  
 and helps pains of the back.

27. *To cure a quartane Ague.*

Take all the Urine the party maketh at one time *Mizaldus.*  
 that hath the Quartern Ague, and knead flower,  
 and make a Cake with it, and when it is baked, give  
 it to a Dog of the house, do so two or three times,  
 at length the Party will be well, and the Dog lick,  
 choose a Dog for a Man, a Birch for a Woman.

28. *To cure the pains of the Stomach.*

To swallow down three grains of Mustich every  
 night going to bed, delivereth from the pains of *Emp Ben.*  
 the Stomach. *Via,*

29. *A secret to cure Swellings.*

Marke where a Swine rubs himself, then cut off  
 a piece of the wood, and rub any swoln place with  
 it, and it will help it; with this Proviso, that  
 where the Hogg rubs his head, is good for the



lings of the head; and where the neck, those of the neck, &c. If you cannot apply the place or part of it where the Hogg rubbed, then apply the grieved place to it.

30. *To cure the Spleen.*

The rind of an Ash-tree boiled in Wine, and a draught of the Wine drunk fix or seven mornings together, easeth the Spleen.

31.

Pains of the Spleen trouble a man most after meat.

32. *To break the Stone.*

Egg-shells dried and beaten into powder, and given in White-wine, breaks the Stone.

*Mixaldis.*

33. *To make hair grow.*

Mice-dung, with the ashes of burnt Wasps, and burnt Hazel-nuts, made into an Ointment with Vinegar of Roses, do trimly deck a bald-head with hairs, being anointed with it.

34. *Against the Stone, Strangury, and Collick.*

Six cloves of Garlick stamped and strained into a draught of Rhennish-wine and drunk up, is a present remedy for the Stone, Strangury, or Collick.

35. *To make People look young.*

Gather Elder-flowers on a *Midsummer* day, dry them into powder, and take a spoonful of it in Borrage-water every morning and evening, makes people look young.

36. *To keep hair from growing.*

Burn Horse-leeches into powder, and mix them with Vinegar, and therewithal rub the place where you would have hair grow no more, and you shall ave your desire.

37. *To be Laxative.*

Drinking much Butter-milk makes one Laxative.

38. *To*

38. *To cure the Falling-sicknes.*

The stone of a Swallow beaten into powder, and *Petrus His-*  
given in drink to such as have the Falling-sickness, *panius.*  
cures them.

39. *To know conception in Women.*

Mingle 2 spoonfuls of water with one spoonful  
of clarified honey, and give it to a woman when  
she goeth to sleep; if she feel griping and pains in  
her belly, she is conceived with Childe; else not.

40. *To know the life or death of a Patient.*

Green Nettles steeped in the urine of one that is *Mix Idus.*  
sick 24 hours; if they remain green and fresh, the  
sick will live; else not.

41. *To break and expel the Stone.*

The berries of White thorns, they being taken  
in White-wine are of great force to break and ex-  
pel the Stone,

42. *Against the Plague.*

Plantane is given with good success to such as  
have the Plague.

43. *Against red Eyes.*

Wormwood stamped with the white of an Egge,  
and apply'd to the eyes by way of a plaister, is a  
no'able way to take away the redness and bloodi-  
ness of them.

44. *To make Womens Breasts round.*

A Garland made of Ivy-leaves laved to the breast *Mix Idus.*  
of a Woman that hangs flagging, gathers them up  
decently, and makes them round; the like will  
leaves do if applyed, being bruised.

45. *To cleanse Wound.*

If you wash wounds with wine wherein Agri- *Mix Idus.*  
mony hath been boyled, it cleanseth them of their  
filth and putrefaction,

46 *To open Wounds**Mixt.*

Also stamp Agrimony, and apply it to wounds that are ill knit or joynted, and it will open them again.

47. *To clear the sight.*

The juyce of Rew mixed with clarified honey, and dropped into the eye, a drop at a time, takes away dimness of sight.

48. *To Cure the Tooth-ach.*

A head of Garlick, ( the skins being pulled off) bruised, and applied in equal parts, to the soles of the feet where they are hollow, helps them with speed that are pained with the Tooth-ach, especially if it come of a cold cause, and lye in the nether Jaw.

49. *To cure warts.**Mixt.*

If you rub Warts with the leaves of Figg-trees, and bury the leaves in the earth, and the Warts will insensibly consume away.

50. *To cure the Strangury.*

Bryony-berries dried and beaten in powder, and drank in the decoction of Water-cresses, doth wonderfully help the Strangury.

51 *A secret to make a Woman be delivered without pain.*

Take of Venice Treacle 1 Scruple, of Liquorice and Cinamon in powder, of each 3 Grains, of White-wine an Ounce and a half; mix all these together, and make of them a Potion.

If a Woman take such a drink as this is every other morning, about a fortnight or three weeks before her Delivery, it will make her Labour very easie; my Author sayes she will bring forth without any paine at all.

*Benewinus  
Victorius  
Faventius.  
Emp.*



52. *To stop the Bloody Flux.*

Take of Yarrow, and Plantane, of each a like quantity, beat them, and strain the juce of them into Red-wine; a good draught of which being drunk morning and evening, will stop the Bloody Flux.

53. *To know if a Woman be with Child.*

Mizaldus.

If a woman desire to know whether she be with Child or not, let her make water in a clean Copper or Brazen Vessel at night when she goes to bed, and put a Nettle into it; if the Nettle have red spots in it in the next morning, she is with Child, else not.

54. *To prevent Diseases in Cattel.*

Oxen, Kine, Bullocks, or Horses, will not be troubled with any Disease; if you hang a Harts-horn about their necks. Absyrinus.

55. *To clear the Eyes wonderfully.*

Put two or three of the seeds of *Oculus Christi*, into the Eye, and within a while after you shall not feel them, whereby you will think they are not there, at last they will drop out of themselves, compassed about with slimy filth, which hinders the sight: If you use this now and then, it will clear your Eyes wonderfully.

56. *To cure Warts.*

Warts rubbed with a piece of new Beef, and the Beef buried in the ground, the Warts will consume as the Beef rots.

57. *To cure any Sore.*

Take the Inner Rind of an Oak Tree, and boyl it well in fair water, then bath any Sore with it, whether new or old, three or four times every morning and evening, and then anoint it with fresh Butter, and flower of Brimstone well mixed, and you shall see a speedy cure.

58. *To*



58. *To cure the Jaundies.*

Take a Burr root, the bigger the better, and scrape it clean, then put it into a pot of new Ale, and the Ale will boyl; let it stand 24 hours close stopped, and then let one that hath the Yellow Jaundies drink a good draught of it, and in doing so two or three mornings together, he will be cured.

59. *To cure the Strangury.*

Let him that hath the Strangury drink a draught of small Ale, wherein the Inner-rind of the young branches of a Hazel Tree have been boyled, first in the morning, and last at night; it will help him in few dayes.

60. *To cure such as have lost their Voices.*

Lay a thin piece of raw Beef to the Forehead of them that have lost their Voices, and remove it not all night, & in two or three nights it will help them.

61. *To cure the Gout. or Palsey.*

Take the bones of Horses, and wash them clean, then dry them in the Sun, then break them, and boyl them in a Caldron of water a long time, and save the fat which cometh from them, which is an excellent remedy either for Gout or Palsey.

62. *To cure the Pin and Web.*

The Ashes of burnt Snails put into the Eye takes away the spots thereof,

63. *To stop a defluxion of Rheum.*

A piece of raw Beef of an indifferent thickness, put in steep all day in good Aqua-vitæ, and laid at night to the Temples, and let lye there all night, stops the watring of the eyes, and all Rheum that flows down from the head.

64. *A wonderful way to cure Dropfies*

Draw a Cord through the tail of a Water-Snake, and

and hang her up, a Vessel of water being under her, in which she may gape, and after a litle time will she vomit up a stone, which will drink up all the water; this stone being tyed to the Navil ( in a piece of fine linnen ) of one that hath the Dropsie, quickly draws out all the water.

*65. To kill Worms in the Teeth.*

An Egg that is laid on a *Thursday*, the white being emptied out, and the empty place filled with Salt, and gently roasted by the fire, without burning, till it may be beaten into powder; and Kanker'd Teeth rubbed with it, kills both Kanker and Worms that eats the Teeth.

*66. To kill Tetters*

White Copperis, the quantity of half an Ounce dissolved in a pint of water, kills all Tettars and Ringworms.

*67. A secret against the Collick.*

A litle piece of the Navil string of a Child that is newly born, being inclosed in a Ring, and so born that it touch the skin, is a sure and perfect remedy against the Collick,

*68. Against diseases of the Bladder.*

The decoction of the leaves of Plantane, is a most sure remedy for the Diseases of the Bladder, being drank morning and evening.

*69. To cure one that is Bewitched.*

If any one be bewitched, put some Quicksilver Wicker. in a quill, stop it close, and lay it under the threshold of the dore.

*70. To prevent Witchcraft.*

*St. Johns-wort* born about one, keeps one from being hurt either by Witches or Devils.

*71. To know if a patient will dye or no.*

Number the dayes from the 26th day of *June*, to the

the day when a Partey first began to fall sick, and divide the number by 3. If 1 remain, he will be long sick; if 2, he will dye; if none, he will quickly recover.

72. *Against swelling of the Body.*

*Iob. Ardens*

The juyce of the Roots of Daffadil, mixed with a little Saffron and water, gives speedy help to those that are suddenly swolne.

73. *Against Priapismus, or constant standing of the Yard.*

Hemlock boyled, and the Yard bathed with the decoction of it, help the Priapismus, or continual stending of the Yard.

74. *To break the Stone.*

Garlick beat to powder, and the powder taken inwardly, breaks the Stone.

75. *A precious remedy that cures the old Head-ach, and Eytz. and Rheumes,*

Beat Bay salt into powder by it self, and as much Cummin-seed by it self, and as much common Fennel-seed by it self, then mix them together with a little Rose Vinegar, over a Chafingdish of Coals, and apply it hot upon a cloth to the nape of the neck near the head; the next night change it. This is a most precious Medicine, for it cures the most inveterate Head ach, though of never so long continuance, or never so violent; besides it clears the Eye-sight, and draws away the superfluous humours of the head.

76. *To provoke the Terms, and After-birth.*

*Petrus Hispanus.*

Sage either sod, or taken inwardly, or Beaten, and applyed Plaister-wise to the Matrix, draws forth both Terms, and After-burden.

77. *To know if the Patient will live or dye.*

Shave the Crown of the Head of one that is sick, and



and lay upon the shaved place, Rew stamped with  
Oyle of Roses, binding it on; and if the Party  
lives within 6 hours after, he will live, else not.

I suppose this may be true in Diseases of the  
Head, and it may cure them, if curable; and I ve-  
rily believe it is a notable remedy for Mad-folks.

*78. Against Fits of the Mother.*

A spoonfull of the powder of Nettle-seed, ming-  
led with good Wine, and drank at a time, asswa-  
geth the pains of the Matrix, the windiness of the  
same, as also the Fits of the Mother.

*79. To cure the Tooth-ach.*

If a Hog-louce, or Wood-louce be pricked with  
a Needle, and any Aching Tooth presently touch-  
ed with that Needle, the pain will instantly cease.

*80. Against Barrenness.*

The seed of Docks tyed to the left Arm of a *Africanus*  
Woman, helps Barrenness.

*81. To cure a swoln Breast.*

Goats-dung mixed with Vinegar and Bran, ap-  
plied Plaister-wise to swelled Breasts, gives speedy  
cure.

*82. To cure a Wound in the Head.*

Betony stamped, and applied to any wound in  
the head, draws out the broken bones, if there be  
any, and heals the wound.

*83. To cure the Stone.*

The seeds that are found in the knobs of the *Mixaldu*  
lesser Burs, being beaten in fine powder, and given  
in White wine, purge Stones and Sand very effectua-  
lly from the Reins.

*84. To bring away Birth, and after-Birth.*

If you seeth Mugwort in water, and apply it *Rogevius*  
hot Plaister-wise to the Navil and Thighs of a wo-  
man in Travel, it bringeth away both Birth and  
After-

After-Birth ; but then you must speedily take it away, least it draw down Matrix and all.

85. *A secret to cure a Burn without a scarr left.*

There is a pretty secret to cure a Scald or Burn without a scarr ; Take Sheeps Suet, and Sheeps dung, and the inner rind of Elder, boyl these to an Oyntment, and that will do it.

86. *A rare secret to draw teeth.*

To draw a tooth without pain, fill an earthen Crucible full of Emmets ( Ants, or Pismires, call them by which name you will ) Eggs and all, and when you have burned them, keep the ashes, with which if you touch a Tooth, it will fall out.

87. *To take off Freckles.*

Anoint a Freckled Face either with the blood of a Bull, or of a Hare, it will put away the Freckles, and make the Skin clear.

88. *To cure the trembling hands.*

Mugwort steeped in Rose-water. and the hands washed with it, helps the tremblings of them.

89. *A rare Stone against Payson, or Stinging.*

Take a great overgrown Toad, and tye her up in a Leather bagg pricked full of holes, & put her, bagg and all, into an Emmet hill, and the Emmets will eat up all the flesh, and then you may find the Stone, wich is of marvailous uertue.

If a man be poisoned, it will draw all the poyson to it presently ; if he be stung by a Bee, Wasp, or Hornet, or bitten by an Adder, by touching it with this Stone, both pain and swelling will presently cease.

90. *To know if this stone be right.*

If you chance to buy this Stone, and would know whether, it be a true one or not, hold it near a Toad ; if it be a good one she will come to catch it from you, else not,

91. *To*

91. To cure Warts.

If you anoynt Warts with the juyce of Elder-berries, it wil take them away.

92. To cause easie travel in Women, and to bring forth the After birth.

The outward rind of Radish-roots, the hearb *B n. Vici.*  
*Mercury*, of each one ounce, Saffron 3 graines, *Cas- Favem.*  
*sia Ligne*a in powder a drachm, juyce of Savin two *Emp.*  
drachms; beat them all together, and wrap them  
in a fine linnen cloth, and hold them to the matrix  
of a Woman in travel, when the birth is near, and  
the child will come out but with a little pain; and  
not only the Birth, but the After-birth.

93. To cure a Quartane Ague.

The juyce of Knot-grass drunk with the powder *Mizald is.*  
of 7 Pepper-corns a litle before the Fit comes,  
cures the *Quarteant* Ague; but they say it must be  
gathered on a Thursday, and the juyce pressed out  
then also.

94. To cure an old Joynt-disease.

A Bathe wherein Emmets and their eggs have  
been sod, will quickly cure an old and almost un-  
curable Joynt-disease.

95. To cure lame and num Limbs.

Oyle wherein Frogs have been sodden so long  
till all the flesh is sod off from their bones, doth  
mightily help all benumbedness and lameness of  
the joynts and nerves.

96. To cure Deafness.

The juyce of Betony dropped down into the  
Ear puts away Deafness.

97. To cure a Wound wonderfully.

Take a handful of Arsmart, wet in clean water, *Parac. l'us:*  
and lay it gently in a wound or sore; then take it  
away, and bury it in some place that is moyst, and



the wound will heal as the same rots.

98. *To cure sore Eyes and Head-ach,*

The water of Marigolds helps Diseases in the Eyes, and takes away pain in the Head.

99. *To bring away the after-birth.*

*Mizaldus.*

The smock of Marigold-flowers received up a Womans privities by a funnell, brings away easily the After-birth, although the midwife have let go her hold.

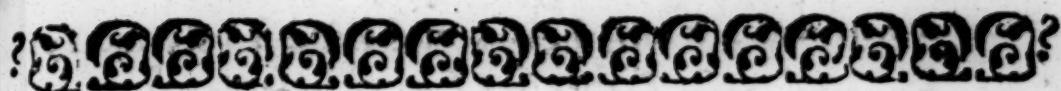
100. *To cure the Gout.*

The head of a Kite before she have feathers, being burnt, and a scruple of the ashes taken in water once a day helps the Gout.

---

**FINIS.**

---



*A Compleat Table of Diseases treated  
of in Culpeper's Last Legacy, pointing  
by the Figures to the Pages where the Cure  
of the Disease is set down; taken in an Alpha-  
betical Order: With divers Experiments  
and Curiosities intermixed under thier proper  
Heads.*

**A**  
**O**f the Apoplexy Page 32  
 Against a Quartane Ague p  
 76, 99, 107, 218, 265, 275.  
 To cure Agues of all sorts p. 248,  
 255.  
 Against an Ach in the arms p. 89  
 To procure the Appetite p 97  
 Against cold Aches p. 103  
 Aphorisms to be observed by such  
 as intend to practice Physick p  
 161  
 Of Arthriticals p. 194  
 For an Ach coming of an old bruise  
 p. 239  
 Against Ach in the Arms p 241  
 For a red Swelling in the Leg or  
 Arm p. 241  
 Ach or Stitch, its cure p. 251 257  
 Aphorism to know Recovery from  
 sickness p 262

**B**  
**A**gainst Bleeding p. 73  
 Against the Biting of a mad  
 dogg p. 76

Against the pain in the Bones p.  
 79, 91  
 Against Bruises and aches p. 79,  
 102, 251  
 Against shortness of Breath p. 80,  
 100  
 To stanch Blood p. 80 94 95  
 For a Belly that is bound or co-  
 stive p. 85  
 To cure a Burn p 88  
 To provoke the Birth p. 93  
 To cleanse the Breast  
 For pain of the Back p. 97  
 For Womens Breasts that are swell-  
 ed p. 100  
 To cure a sore Breast p. 108  
 To ripen and break a Boil p 102  
 To cure lameness in Breasts p 100  
 For a stinking Breath p. 101, 213  
 Against pains in the Back p. 104  
 Of the Breasts and Lungs, and  
 their infirmities p 223  
 Against stoppings of the Breast p.  
 224  
 Of Womens Breasts, their infir-  
 mities and cures p. 224  
 For

## A Compleat Table of Diseases, &c.

For sore Breasts that are broken	Cure for Chollicks
p. 224	p. 83, 248, 251,
For a sore Breast	271
p. 225, 226	Against an old Cough
For hardness of the Breast	p. 85
p. 225	To perfume and preserve Cloaths
For an inflammation in the Breast	p. 91
p. 226	To cheer the Complexion.
To cure sore Breasts Without a	p. 101
scar	Against swollen Cods
p. 226	p. 102
To cure a swollen Breast	To expel a dead Childe
p. 273	p. 104
Of the Belly, and its infirmities	To take spots out of Cloaths
p. 234	p. 106
For a hard Belly without pain	To preserve from Cold Diseases
p. 234	p. 107
For a hard Belly that is sore	Excellent Cordial Water
p. 234	p. 107
Of the Back, and its infirmities	Of Conserve
p. 236	p. 150
For weakness in the Back.	Of Cephalicks
p. 236	p. 172
For a pain in the Back	Of Cordials
p. 236	p. 183
For heat in the Back	Against a cough in a young Childe
p. 241	p. 223
For an ache in the Bores	For a Stard Collick
p. 241	p. 235
An excellent Balme	For a Corn on the Toe
p. 246	p. 241
Bladder, its pain, and remedy	To prevent Cramps
p. 252, 271	p. 249
To cure the Blind	Cramp, its Cure
p. 264	id.
To make Women Breasts round	Cods pained, its remedy
p. 267	p. 252
Against the swelling of the Body	Cold shew prevented
p. 272	p. 256
Against Barrenness	Cordials and Cleaners of great
p. 273	worth
To bring away Birth and after	p. 260, 265
birth	Carbuncles and Sores, their cure
p. 273, 276	p. 262
A Secret to cure a Barn without a	To know Conception in Women
scar left	p. 267
p. 274	To prevent diseases in cattel
	p. 269

### C

OF C atalypsis or Planet struck	
p. 30	
Of Convulsions and Cramps	
p. 40	
For procuring Chastity	
p. 74	
Against a Consumption	
p. 75	
Directions to apply Cupping-glases.	
p. 81	

### D

Against Deafness	p. 76, 87, 90,
	91, 98
To cure Deafness and Impostumes of the Ears	p. 263, 75
Against the Dropsie	p. 82, 104,
	250, 261, 262
Dropsie, to know whether hot or Cold.	p. 261
Of Dizziness.	p. 206
To cause Deliverance in Women	p. 256
	10



## A Compleat Table of Diseases, &c.

To help Digestion, and expel  
Winde p 257

### E

**R** Ecipients for cure of the Eyes

p 74, 100

Against hot Rheumes in the Eyes

p, 102

To fetch any thing out of the Ea

p. 109

To bring an Ear-wigg out of the

Ear

p. 76, 211

Against Rhume in the Eyes p 84

Against noyle in the Ears p. 86

Against swollen Eyes ibid

Against cold in the Eyes p. 91

Against Watery Eyes p 106

For the Eyes that are bloodshot

p. 207

For the Eyes that are blasted,

ibid.

Excellent Water to cure the sight

ibid.

For hurt of the Eye by a stroke,

p 208

To preserve the sight ibid.

To draw Rheume back from the

Eyes

ibid.

Medicine for the Eyes ibid.

For such as have a skin growing

before their Eyes

p 209

For such as have lost their sight

by reason of Small-pox

ibid.

For sore Eyes proceeding of heat

210

For Eyes that are swelled

ibid.

For noyle in the Ears

ibid.

For pain in the Ears p. 245

For an Imposthume in the Ear

p. 211

Of Electuaries

p. 144

Eyes troubled with hot Rheume

p 250

For weak Eyes p 261, 272

Against red Eyes p 267

To clear the Eyes p 268, 269

Sore Eyes p 276

### F

**O** F the Fezzy, its causes,  
signes and cure p 23

Of Forgetfulness, its causes and  
cure p. 28

Of Falling sickness, p. 39, 256

Fever, a Table of them p 57

A Comment on the Table of Fea-  
vers p. 53

Of a one day Fever p 57

Of a Fever lasting three or four  
dayes p. 60

Of a rotten Fever p 61

Of continual Feavers p. 63

Of a burning Fever p. 65

Of an intermitting Tertian Fea-  
ver, commonly called Second  
dayes Ague p 66

Of a Quatane Fever or Ague

p. 68

Of a Quotidian Fever or Ague

p. 69

Of a Hestick Fever p. 70

Against red Face, or redness of  
Skin p 74, 252

Against Falling sickness p. 75.

95, 251, 258, 259, 263, 267

Against Fever p. 78

Against pain in the Feet ibid

Against French-pox p. 79, 99

For the cure of Festered tores

p. 80

To bring Freckles out of the Face

p. 83

To drive away Flies

p. 85

*A Compleat Table of Diseases, &c.*

Against tough Flegm	p. 93	Against the Gripping of the Guts	p. 84, 260
Against bloody Flux	p. 95	Of the Gums, and their infirmities	p. 218
Against Fistulaes	p. 97, 98, 100, 253	Against a Scurvy in the Gums	ibid.
Against the falling down of the Fundament	p. 98	Against a Canker in the Gums	ibid.
To stop Fluxes of Blood	104	Against rotting and consuming of the Gums	p. 218
Of the Face, and its infirmities	p. 219		
Against a red Face	p. 219, 222		
To make the Face fair	p. 220		
For a white scurf in the Face	p. 220		

## H

Against Freckles in the Face p. 220, 248, 274  
For a blasted Face p. 220  
For a Face full of red Pimples p. 221  
To take away the mark of the Small-pox p. 221  
Of the Fundament, and its infirmities p. 237  
Falling out of the Fundament ibid.  
For the Figg in the Fundament ibid.  
To cure the Fellon p. 247  
To make Fat people lean p. 254  
Forgetfulness and Dulness, its remedy ibid.  
Against all Fluxes of the Belly p. 160  
To stop the bloody Flux p. 169

G

Against the Gout p. 77, 81, 93, 94, 96, 99, 101, 105, 109, 246, 250, 251, 253, 257, 258, 262, 265, 270, 276  
A Remedy for such as are defective in the parts of Generation p. 81

To cure a wound in the Head p. 273  
Of Head-ach in general, with its several Names and Kinds p. 1  
Of the Head-ach coming of Heat p. 2  
Of the Head-ach coming of Cold p. 4  
Of the Head-ach coming of Dryness or moisture p. 6  
Head-ach coming of plenty of Blood p. 8  
Head-ach coming of Windiness p. 11  
Head-ach caused from the Stomach p. 13  
Head-ach caused by Drunkenness p. 14, 206  
Head-ach caused by Feavers p. 15  
Head-ach it self p. 16, 77, 79, 85, 86, 94, 105, 259, 263, 272, 276  
Against Heart-burning p. 75  
To strengthen the Heart p. 106  
Against Discaſes of the Head p. 77  
To cure broken Bones in the Head ibid.  
Against

## A Compleat Table of Diseases, &c.

Against Imposthume in the Head p. 79

To cure Hemorrhoids p. 88, 93

To keep Hair from growing p. 98

Against falling off the Hair, by reason of a scald Head p. 206

Medicines for the Head, and its diseases p. 205, 206

To purge the Head p. 206, 262, 264

O. Hystericals p. 188

O. Hystericals p. 192

Against an Hourneis p. 223, 248

Of the Heart and its infirmities p. 233

For a trembling of the Heart ibid

For Fatness about the Heart ibid

For gnawing about the Heart p. 234

For Heart qualms ibid

To take away Hairs superfluous p. 247

To make Hair grow p. 266

To prevent Hair from growing ibid.

To preserve Health in body and mind p. 255

To cure the trembling Hand p. 274

I

Against Inflammation in Womens Breasts p. 74, 75

Against yellow Jaundies p. 78, 80, 88

Against Inflammation of any wound p. 80, 94

To cure Imposthumes p. 96, 259

Against the Jaundies p. 97

Jaundies Black, its cure p. 251, 263

To cure lame Joynts p. 255

Old Joynts diseases, its cure p. 275

To cure the Jaundies p. 270

K

Against swelling in the Knees p. 77, 78

To cure Kings Evil p. 94, 251

Of the Knees, and their infirmities p. 239, 240

For ach or swelling in the Knees p. 239

Knot gra's, its virtue p. 250

L

Of the Lethargy, causes, signs, and cure p. 27

Of the stopping of the Lungs p. 85

Against swollen Leggs and feet p. 84, 86

Against Lethargy p. 86, 87

Against ach in the Leggs p. 89

Against dropsie in the Leggs p. 89

Against weakness in the Lungs p. 224

Against inflammation in the Lungs ibid.

Of the Liver, and its infirmities p. 231

To cause the Liver well to digest ibid.

For heat of the Liver ibid.

Stoppages for the Liver p. 231, 232

For the Liver gently to cleanse and cool p. 232

Of the Leggs, and their infirmities p. 240

For swelling in the Leggs ibid.

For a Legg that is swelled, and will pit after touching ibid.

T 4

F



# Compleat Table of Diseases. &c.

For an ach in the Leggs p. 224  
 Lame Limbs, their cure p. 257  
 A rare secret against Lice p. 264  
 To be Laxative p. 266  
 To cure lame and numb Limbs p. 275

## M

**O**f the Meagrim, causes, signs, and cure p. 18, 87, 89, 94, 208

**O** the Mare p. 42  
**O** the Madnes p. 43  
**O** the Melancholy p. 45  
 To increase Milk in Nurses p. 87  
 To drive away Mice p. 245  
 To fix M. t. les p. 99  
 Against fits of the Mother p. 105  
 264 273

For the Memory p. 107  
 To strengthen Memory p. 254  
**O** the Mouth, and its infirmities p. 213

**O** the spitting blood ibid.  
 To recover lost speech ibid.  
 Against extream heat of the Mouth p. 214

Against a Canker in the Mouth ibid.  
 To procure Milk in Womens breasts p. 225, 226  
 To destroy Mothes p. 253

## N

**A**gainst bleeding at the Nose p. 84, 85, 90, 211, 212  
 For a Pimple, or a fleshy substance growing out of the Nose p. 211, 212  
 To cleanse the Nose p. 211

For a canker in the Nose p. 212  
 For an imposthume in the Nose ibid.

**O** the Navil and its infirmities p. 235

For the swelling of the Navil ibid.

For a Childs Navil that is sore with crying ibid.

To make a Nail grow where it is wanting p. 242

To stanch bleeding at the Nose p. 247, 249, 253, 257

## O

**O** the variations or Apherisms to be observed in Physick p. 73, 83

Cooling and dringing Oynments p. 88

**O** the Oyls p. 140

## P

**O** the dead Palsy in ones side p. 34

**O** the Palsey in one member p. 38

**O** the shaking Palsey p. 47

Against the Palsey p. 103, 270

A Pultice for any swelling p. 86

Against Passing of blood p. 87

Against Pleurisy p. 93, 259

To cure the Piles p. 99

To expel Poison p. 95, 97, 254

For a Plague sore p. 97, 246, 267

Against the Plague p. 108

To prevent poison p. 97, 274

To cure a Pimple or pearl in the eye p. 100, 209, 270

## A Compleat Table of Diseases, &c.

A Treatise of the Pestilence, with its previfion, provifion and prevention p. 113

Of Pills p. 153

Ofepectorals p. 181

Of Purges, and Purging Medicines p. 196

Ofe the Choyce of Purges p. 198

Ofe the correction of Purges p. 198

Ofe the time and manner of Purging p. 201

Ofe the falling down of the Pallat p. 214

Plur'fie, to try if it be fixed or not p. 246

To prevent the Palfie p. 249

Pr' fiek, its cure? p. 254

To know whether a Patient will live or dye p. 267, 271, 272

Against a Priapifmus, or constant ftanding o. the yard p. 272

### Q

Against the Quinfie p. 223 259

### R

Against Rapture p. 75 92 250

Against the Ring-worm p. 20

Directions to fet Bowed Ribbs p. 82

O Remalls and Vecicalls p. 191

Against Rheuma p. 263 272

To flop a defluxion of Rheum p. 270

### S

Remedy for fuch as fpeak in their fleep p. 207

To procure Sleep p. 106

Against Over-Sneezing p. 78

Against the Stone p. 81 84

To break the Stone p. 103, 106, 252, 256, 259, 261, 262 266

To break the Stone in the K dney p. 105, 273

Sympathetical obferv. p. 82

Against the biting of a Spider p. 83

Against the Strangury p. 84, 103, 266 268 270

To break the Stone in the Bladder p. 87

Against a Scald p. 88

To know if h: Sick will live or dye p. 90

Against Spitting of Blood p. 96

Against Surfeit p. 97

Against the ftinging of Scorpions p. 99

For a Swelling p. 101

To chear the Spirits p. 102

Against the Sciatica p. 103

To make the Skin white p. 104

To cure a Spot p. 105

O Sympas p. 134

O Salts p. 154

O Stomachicals p. 185

O Splenicals p. 190

Ofe the Spleen and its infirmities and cure p. 226, 262 266

For the hardness of the Spleen p. 227

For the Spleen over-burthened p. 227, 228 245

Ofe the Stomach, and its infirmities p. 229

For pain in the Stomach p. 229 265

For moyflue of the Stomach p. 229 230

For heat of the Stomach p. 229

## A Compleat Table of Diseases. &c.

For Windiness in the Stomach *ibid.*  
 For a Stinking-breath caused by the Stomach p. 230  
 For a weak Stomach p. 230, 232  
 Of the Sides, and their infirmities p. 232  
 For Wind in the Side p. 233  
 For a Stich in the Side *ibid.*  
 For Sinews that are shrunk in the thighs or elsewhere p. 232  
 To draw out a Splinter p. 245  
 To cure the Squinzy p. 247, 248  
 To beautifie the Skin p. 248  
 Scalds and Scabs, their cure p. 252  
 To cure the Bloody flux p. 254  
 To cause Sleep p. 258  
 To provoke a Stool *ibid.*  
 To cure the Swine-pox p. 261  
 To cure a secret Swelling p. 265  
 To cure any Sore p. 269

### T

To preserve the Teeth from rottenness p. 76, 83  
 Against pain in the Thighs p. 78  
 Against a Tetter p. 80, 108  
 Against the over-flowing of the Terms p. 87  
 Against Tooth-ach p. 89, 93, 94, 255, 268  
 To cure the Tooth-ach for ever p. 108, 215, 216, 217, 273  
 For a Swollen Throat p. 102  
 Distillations of the Throat p. 206  
 To make a Tooth drop out p. 107, 216  
 To preserve the Teeth p. 246  
 A rare Secret to draw Teeth p. 274

To help a woman in Travel p. 90  
 Of Troches p. 156  
 Of the Teeth and their medicines p. 215  
 To keep Teeth white p. 215, 247  
 Against rotting of the Teeth p. 216  
 To make childrens Teeth cut p. 216  
 To fasten the Teeth p. 217  
 Of the Throat, and its infirmities p. 222  
 Of the Thighs, and their infirmities p. 238  
 For stiffness of the Thighs *ibid.*  
 For aching of the bones of the Thighs *ibid.*  
 To knit the sinews and veins of the Thighs *ibid.*  
 For swelling of the Thighs *ibid.*  
 To draw out a Thorn p. 249  
 To cure a sore Throat p. 256  
 To kill Tettors p. 258, 271  
 To help children that breed Teeth p. 264  
 To provoke the Terms and after-birth p. 272

### V

Of Vertigo or swithning in the head p. 20  
 To provoke Urine p. 83, 85, 89, 108  
 A Remedy for such as cannot hold their Urine p. 87, 261  
 Vomica and a purge p. 99  
 To cure Ulcers p. 92, 98, 99  
 To clear the Voice p. 93  
 To cure such as have lost their Voices p. 270  
 For one Vomits up his Victuals p. 230  
 To stay Vomiting *ibid.*  
 Against



# A Compleat Table of Diseases, &c.

## W.

**A**gainst a Webb in the eye  
p. 74 100. 107 209. 249. 256  
Against Worms p. 259 260  
To kil Worms in the teeth, p. 271  
To cure a Wenn p. 84  
To cure Warts p. 87. 101, 102  
268, 169 275  
Knitter for Wounds. p. 92  
Excellent Oyl for old Wounds  
p. 104  
To cleanse Wounds, p. 167  
To open Wounds p. 268  
Of Waters p. 128  
Of Wennis p. 137  
To take off a Wenn p. 245  
To cure a Wound well and quick-  
ly p. 240

To cure those that cannot hold  
their Water p. 246  
To hasten delivery in Women  
p. 246  
To cause Waking p. 218  
A secret to make a Woman be  
delivered without pain p. 268  
275  
To know if a woman be with  
child p. 269  
To cure one that is Bewitched  
p. 271  
To prevent Witchcraft ibid.  
To cure a Wound wonderfully  
p. 275

## Y.

**T**o make one look Young  
p. 266

---

FINIS.

---

28

B

P

A

F

T

C

J

B

T

W

Q

R

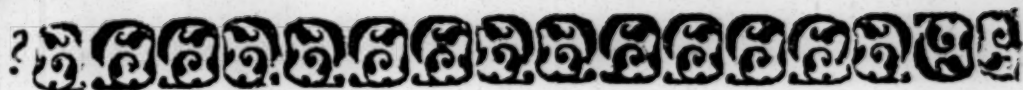
B

C

T

T

T



Books sold by Obadiab Blagrove at the Printing Press in  
Little Brittain against the Pump.

- B**iblia Junii & Tremlii, Fol.  
Alstedii *Encyclopedia* 2. Vol. Fol.  
*Aretius in Novam Testamentum*, Fol.  
*Fabritius in Psalmos*, Fol.  
The Compleat Statesman, Fol.  
*Causin's Holy Court* in 5 Tomes  
*Junii Opera*, 2 Vol.  
*Blagraves Astrological Method for Practizing*  
*Phisick*, New.  
The Problems of Aristotle in English.  
*Wits Interpreter*, the English Parnassus, or a  
sure guide to those admirable Accomplish-  
ments that Compleat our English Gentry  
in the most acceptable qualifications of  
Discourse or Writing.  
*Quintus Curtius* in Latine or English.  
*Ramsey of Poysons*, 8.  
*Blagraves Accademy of Eloquence*.  
*Carillon Job* in 12 several Volumes.  
The Pilgrim by J. Hall.  
The History of the Seven Champions of Christen-  
dom.  
The Affize of bread.